

# Complex Lattices, Elliptic Functions, and the Modular Group

Manuel Eberl, Anthony Bordg, Lawrence C. Paulson, Wenda Li

February 6, 2026

## Abstract

This entry defines complex lattices, i.e.  $\Lambda(\omega_1, \omega_2) = \mathbb{Z}\omega_1 + \mathbb{Z}\omega_2$  where  $\omega_1/\omega_2 \notin \mathbb{R}$ . Based on this, various other related topics are covered:

- the modular group  $\Gamma$  and its fundamental region
- elliptic functions and their basic properties
- the Weierstraß elliptic function  $\wp$  and the fact that every elliptic function can be written in terms of  $\wp$
- the Eisenstein series  $G_n$  (including the forbidden series  $G_2$ )
- the ordinary differential equation satisfied by  $\wp$ , the recurrence relation for  $G_n$ , and the addition and duplication theorems for  $\wp$
- the lattice invariants  $g_2, g_3$ , and Klein's  $J$  invariant
- the non-vanishing of the lattice discriminant  $\Delta$
- $G_n, \Delta, J$  as holomorphic functions in the upper half plane
- the Fourier expansion of  $G_n(z)$  for  $z \rightarrow i\infty$
- the functional equations of  $G_n, \Delta, J$ , and  $\eta$  w.r.t. the modular group
- Dedekind's  $\eta$  function
- the inversion formulas for the Jacobi  $\theta$  functions

In particular, this entry contains most of Chapters 1 and 3 from Apostol's *Modular Functions and Dirichlet Series in Number Theory* [1] and parts of Chapter 2.

The purpose of this entry is to provide a foundation for further formalisation of modular functions and modular forms.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Auxiliary material</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	The $z$ -plane vs the $q$ -disc . . . . .	4
1.1.1	The neighbourhood of $i\infty$ . . . . .	4
1.1.2	The parameter $q$ . . . . .	5
1.2	Parallelogram-shaped paths . . . . .	8
<b>2</b>	<b>Möbius transforms and the modular group</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	Basic properties of Möbius transforms . . . . .	10
2.2	Unimodular Möbius transforms . . . . .	11
2.3	The modular group . . . . .	12
2.3.1	Definition . . . . .	12
2.3.2	Basic operations . . . . .	14
2.3.3	Basic properties . . . . .	17
2.4	Code generation . . . . .	24
2.5	The slash operator . . . . .	27
2.6	Representation as product of powers of generators . . . . .	28
2.7	Induction rules in terms of generators . . . . .	31
2.8	Subgroups . . . . .	32
2.8.1	Subgroups containing shifts . . . . .	35
2.8.2	Congruence subgroups . . . . .	36
<b>3</b>	<b>Complex lattices</b>	<b>37</b>
3.1	Basic definitions and useful lemmas . . . . .	38
3.2	Period parallelograms . . . . .	47
3.3	Canonical representatives and the fundamental parallelogram . . . . .	49
3.4	Equivalence of fundamental pairs . . . . .	53
3.5	Additional useful facts . . . . .	55
3.6	Doubly-periodic functions . . . . .	59
<b>4</b>	<b>Fundamental regions of the modular group</b>	<b>60</b>
4.1	Definition . . . . .	60
4.2	The standard fundamental region . . . . .	60
4.3	Proving that the standard region is fundamental . . . . .	64
4.4	The corner point of the standard fundamental region . . . . .	66
4.5	Fundamental regions for congruence subgroups . . . . .	67
<b>5</b>	<b>Elliptic Functions</b>	<b>68</b>
5.1	Definition . . . . .	68
5.2	Basic results about zeros and poles . . . . .	71
5.3	Even elliptic functions . . . . .	75
5.4	Closure properties of the class of elliptic functions . . . . .	76
5.5	Affine transformations and surjectivity . . . . .	79

<b>6</b>	<b>The Weierstraß <math>\wp</math> Function</b>	<b>80</b>
6.1	Preliminary convergence results . . . . .	81
6.2	Definition and basic properties . . . . .	88
6.3	Ellipticity and poles . . . . .	92
6.4	The numbers $e_1, e_2, e_3$ . . . . .	94
6.5	Injectivity of $\wp$ . . . . .	95
6.6	Invariance under lattice transformations . . . . .	96
6.7	Construction of arbitrary elliptic functions from $\wp$ . . . . .	98
<b>7</b>	<b>Eisenstein series and the differential equations of <math>\wp</math></b>	<b>101</b>
7.1	Definition . . . . .	101
7.2	The Laurent series expansion of $\wp$ at the origin . . . . .	103
7.3	Differential equations for $\wp$ . . . . .	104
7.4	Lattice invariants and a recurrence for the Eisenstein series . . . . .	105
7.5	Fourier expansion . . . . .	107
7.6	Behaviour under lattice transformations . . . . .	108
7.7	Recurrence relation . . . . .	110
<b>8</b>	<b>Addition and duplication theorems for <math>\wp</math></b>	<b>112</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Eisenstein series and related invariants as modular forms</b>	<b>114</b>
9.1	Eisenstein series . . . . .	114
9.2	The normalised Eisenstein series . . . . .	116
9.3	The modular discriminant . . . . .	117
9.4	Klein's $J$ invariant . . . . .	118
9.5	Values at specific points . . . . .	119
9.6	Consequences for the fundamental region . . . . .	120
<b>10</b>	<b>Related facts about Jacobi theta functions</b>	<b>121</b>
10.1	Uniqueness of quasi-periodic entire functions . . . . .	121
10.2	Theta inversion . . . . .	125
10.3	Theta nullwert inversions in the reals . . . . .	125
<b>11</b>	<b>The Dedekind <math>\eta</math> function</b>	<b>128</b>
11.1	Definition and basic properties . . . . .	128
11.2	Relation to the Jacobi $\vartheta$ functions . . . . .	130
11.3	The inversion identity . . . . .	131
11.4	General transformation law . . . . .	131
11.5	The transformation law for $G_2$ . . . . .	133

# 1 Auxiliary material

## 1.1 The $z$ -plane vs the $q$ -disc

```
theory Z_Plane_Q_Disc
  imports "HOL-Complex_Analysis.Complex_Analysis" "Theta_Functions.Nome"
begin
```

In the study of modular forms and related subjects, we often need convert between the upper half of the complex plane (typically with a parameter written as  $z$  or  $\tau$ ) and the unit disc (with a parameter written as  $q$ ).

This is particularly interesting for 1-periodic functions  $f(z)$  (or more generally  $n$ -periodic functions where  $n > 0$  is an integer) since such functions have a Fourier expansion in terms of  $q$ , i.e. we can view them both as functions  $f(z)$  for  $\text{Im}(z) > 0$  or  $f(q)$  for  $|q| < 1$ , where the latter is only well-defined due to the periodicity.

### 1.1.1 The neighbourhood of $i\infty$

The following filter describes the neighbourhood of  $i\infty$ , i.e. the neighbourhood of all points with sufficiently big imaginary value. In terms of  $q$ , this corresponds to the point  $q = 0$ .

```
definition at_ii_inf :: "complex filter" ("at'_i $\infty$ ") where
  "at_ii_inf = filtercomap Im at_top"
```

```
lemma eventually_at_ii_inf:
  "eventually ( $\lambda z. \text{Im } z > c$ ) at_ii_inf"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eventually_at_ii_inf_iff:
  " $(\forall_F z \text{ in } at\_ii\_inf. P z) \longleftrightarrow (\exists c. \forall z. \text{Im } z > c \longrightarrow P z)$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eventually_at_ii_inf_iff':
  " $(\forall_F z \text{ in } at\_ii\_inf. P z) \longleftrightarrow (\exists c. \forall z. \text{Im } z \geq c \longrightarrow P z)$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma filterlim_Im_at_ii_inf: "filterlim Im at_top at_i $\infty$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma filterlim_at_ii_infI:
  assumes "filterlim f F at_top"
  shows "filterlim ( $\lambda x. f (\text{Im } x)$ ) F at_i $\infty$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma filtermap_scaleR_at_ii_inf:
  assumes "c > 0"
  shows "filtermap ( $\lambda z. c *_R z$ ) at_ii_inf = at_ii_inf"
```

*<proof>*

**lemma** *at\_ii\_inf\_neq\_bot* [*simp*]: "at\_ii\_inf  $\neq$  bot"  
*<proof>*

### 1.1.2 The parameter $q$

The standard mapping from  $z$  to  $q$  is  $z \mapsto \exp(2i\pi z)$ , which is also sometimes referred to as the square of the *nome*. However, if the period of the function is  $n > 01$ , we have to opt for  $z \mapsto \exp(2i\pi z/n)$  instead, so we allow this additional flexibility here.

Note that the inverse mapping from  $q$  to  $z$  is multivalued. We arbitrarily choose the strip with  $\text{Re}(z) \in (-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$  as the codomain of the inverse mapping.

**definition** *to\_q* :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where  
"to\_q n  $\tau = \exp(2 * \pi * i * \tau / n)$ "

**lemma** *to\_nome\_conv\_to\_q*: "to\_nome = to\_q 2"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to\_q\_conv\_to\_nome*: "to\_q n z = to\_nome (2 \* z / of\_nat n)"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to\_q\_add*: "to\_q n (w + z) = to\_q n w \* to\_q n z"  
**and** *to\_q\_diff*: "to\_q n (w - z) = to\_q n w / to\_q n z"  
**and** *to\_q\_minus*: "to\_q n (-w) = inverse (to\_q n w)"  
**and** *to\_q\_power*: "to\_q n w ^ k = to\_q n (of\_nat k \* w)"  
**and** *to\_q\_power\_int*: "to\_q n w powi m = to\_q n (of\_int m \* w)"  
*<proof>*

**interpretation** *to\_q*: periodic\_fun\_simple "to\_q n" "of\_nat n"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to\_q\_of\_nat\_period* [*simp*]: "to\_q n (of\_nat n) = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to\_q\_of\_int* [*simp*]:  
assumes "int n dvd m"  
shows "to\_q n (of\_int m) = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to\_q\_of\_nat* [*simp*]:  
assumes "n dvd m"  
shows "to\_q n (of\_nat m) = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to\_q\_numeral* [*simp*]:  
assumes "n dvd numeral m"

**shows** "to\_q n (numeral m) = 1"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_of\_nat\_period\_1 [simp]: "w ∈ ℤ ⇒ to\_q (Suc 0) w = 1"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** Ln\_to\_q:  
 assumes "x ∈ Re -' {n/2<..
 shows "Ln (to\_q n x) = 2 \* pi \* i \* x / n"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_nonzero [simp]: "to\_q n τ ≠ 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** norm\_to\_q [simp]: "norm (to\_q n z) = exp (-2 \* pi \* Im z / n)"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_has\_field\_derivative [derivative\_intros]:  
 assumes [derivative\_intros]: "(f has\_field\_derivative f') (at z)" and  
 n: "n > 0"  
 shows "((λz. to\_q n (f z)) has\_field\_derivative (2 \* pi \* i \* f' /  
 n \* to\_q n (f z))) (at z)"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** deriv\_to\_q [simp]: "n > 0 ⇒ deriv (to\_q n) z = 2 \* pi \* i / n  
 \* to\_q n z"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_holomorphic\_on [holomorphic\_intros]:  
 "f holomorphic\_on A ⇒ n > 0 ⇒ (λz. to\_q n (f z)) holomorphic\_on  
 A"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_analytic\_on [analytic\_intros]:  
 "f analytic\_on A ⇒ n > 0 ⇒ (λz. to\_q n (f z)) analytic\_on A"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_continuous\_on [continuous\_intros]:  
 "continuous\_on A f ⇒ n > 0 ⇒ continuous\_on A (λz. to\_q n (f z))"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_continuous [continuous\_intros]:  
 "continuous F f ⇒ n > 0 ⇒ continuous F (λz. to\_q n (f z))"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** to\_q\_tendsto [tendsto\_intros]:  
 "(f → x) F ⇒ n > 0 ⇒ ((λz. to\_q n (f z)) → to\_q n x) F"  
 ⟨proof⟩

```

lemma to_q_eq_to_qE:
  assumes "to_q m  $\tau$  = to_q m  $\tau'$ " "m > 0"
  obtains n where " $\tau' = \tau + \text{of\_int } n * \text{of\_nat } m$ "
  <proof>

lemma to_q_inj_on_standard:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "inj_on (to_q n) (Re -' {-n/2..<n/2})"
  <proof>

lemma filterlim_to_q_at_ii_inf' [tendsto_intros]:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "filterlim (to_q n) (nhds 0) at_ii_inf"
  <proof>

lemma filterlim_to_q_at_ii_inf [tendsto_intros]: "n > 0  $\implies$  filterlim
(to_q n) (at 0) at_ii_inf"
  <proof>

lemma eventually_to_q_neq:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "eventually ( $\lambda w. \text{to\_q } n \ w \neq \text{to\_q } n \ z$ ) (at z)"
  <proof>

lemma inj_on_to_q:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "inj_on (to_q n) (ball z (1/2))"
  <proof>

lemma filtermap_to_q_nhds:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "filtermap (to_q n) (nhds z) = nhds (to_q n z)"
  <proof>

lemma filtermap_to_q_at:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "filtermap (to_q n) (at z) = at (to_q n z)"
  <proof>

lemma is_pole_to_q_iff:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "is_pole f (to_q n x)  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_pole (f o to_q n) x"
  <proof>

definition of_q :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where
  "of_q n q = ln q / (2 * pi * i / n)"

lemma Im_of_q: "q  $\neq$  0  $\implies$  n > 0  $\implies$  Im (of_q n q) = -n * ln (norm q)"

```

```

/ (2 * pi)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma Im_of_q_gt:
  assumes "norm q < exp (-2 * pi * c / n)" "q ≠ 0" "n > 0"
  shows "Im (of_q n q) > c"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma to_q_of_q [simp]: "q ≠ 0 ⇒ n > 0 ⇒ to_q n (of_q n q) = q"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_q_to_q:
  assumes "m > 0"
  shows "∃n. of_q m (to_q m τ) = τ + of_int n * of_nat m"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma filterlim_norm_at_0: "filterlim norm (at_right 0) (at 0)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma filterlim_of_q_at_0:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "filterlim (of_q n) at_ii_inf (at 0)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma at_ii_inf_filtermap:
  assumes "n > 0"
  shows "filtermap (to_q n) at_ii_inf = at 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma eventually_at_ii_inf_to_q:
  assumes n: "n > 0"
  shows "eventually P (at 0) = (∀F x in at_ii_inf. P (to_q n x))"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_q_tendsto:
  assumes "x ∈ Re -' {real n / 2 <..

```

## 1.2 Parallelogram-shaped paths

```
theory Parallelogram_Paths
```

```

imports "HOL-Complex_Analysis.Complex_Analysis"
begin

definition parallelogram_path :: "'a :: real_normed_vector  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a
 $\Rightarrow$  real  $\Rightarrow$  'a" where
  "parallelogram_path z a b =
    linepath z (z + a) +++ linepath (z + a) (z + a + b) +++
    linepath (z + a + b) (z + b) +++ linepath (z + b) z"

lemma path_parallelogram_path [intro]: "path (parallelogram_path z a
b)"
  and valid_path_parallelogram_path [intro]: "valid_path (parallelogram_path
z a b)"
  and pathstart_parallelogram_path [simp]: "pathstart (parallelogram_path
z a b) = z"
  and pathfinish_parallelogram_path [simp]: "pathfinish (parallelogram_path
z a b) = z"
  <proof>

lemma parallelogram_path_altdef:
  fixes z a b :: complex
  defines "g  $\equiv$  ( $\lambda w. z + \text{Re } w *_R a + \text{Im } w *_R b$ )"
  shows "parallelogram_path z a b = g  $\circ$  rectpath 0 (1 + i)"
  <proof>

lemma
  fixes f :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" and z  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  :: complex
  defines "I  $\equiv$  ( $\lambda a b. \text{contour\_integral (linepath (z + a) (z + b)) f}$ )"
  defines "P  $\equiv$  parallelogram_path z  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ "
  assumes "continuous_on (path_image P) f"
  shows contour_integral_parallelogram_path:
    "contour_integral P f =
      (I 0  $\omega_1$  - I  $\omega_2$  ( $\omega_1 + \omega_2$ )) - (I 0  $\omega_2$  - I  $\omega_1$  ( $\omega_1 + \omega_2$ ))"
  and contour_integral_parallelogram_path':
    "contour_integral P f =
      contour_integral (linepath z (z +  $\omega_1$ )) ( $\lambda x. f x - f (x +$ 
 $\omega_2)$ ) -
      contour_integral (linepath z (z +  $\omega_2$ )) ( $\lambda x. f x - f (x +$ 
 $\omega_1)$ )"
  <proof>

end

```

## 2 Möbius transforms and the modular group

```

theory Modular_Group
imports
  "HOL-Complex_Analysis.Complex_Analysis"
  "HOL-Number_Theory.Number_Theory"

```

begin

## 2.1 Basic properties of Möbius transforms

lemma moebius\_uminus [simp]: "moebius (-a) (-b) (-c) (-d) = moebius a  
b c d"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma moebius\_uminus': "moebius (-a) b c d = moebius a (-b) (-c) (-d)"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma moebius\_diff\_eq:  
fixes a b c d :: "'a :: field"  
defines "f ≡ moebius a b c d"  
assumes \*: "c = 0 ∨ z ≠ -d / c ∧ w ≠ -d / c"  
shows "f w - f z = (a \* d - b \* c) / ((c \* w + d) \* (c \* z + d)) \*  
(w - z)"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma continuous\_on\_moebius [continuous\_intros]:  
fixes a b c d :: "'a :: real\_normed\_field"  
assumes "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0" "c = 0 ∨ -d / c ∉ A"  
shows "continuous\_on A (moebius a b c d)"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma continuous\_on\_moebius' [continuous\_intros]:  
fixes a b c d :: "'a :: real\_normed\_field"  
assumes "continuous\_on A f" "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ c = 0  
∨ f z ≠ -d / c"  
shows "continuous\_on A (λx. moebius a b c d (f x))"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma holomorphic\_on\_moebius [holomorphic\_intros]:  
assumes "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0" "c = 0 ∨ -d / c ∉ A"  
shows "(moebius a b c d) holomorphic\_on A"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma holomorphic\_on\_moebius' [holomorphic\_intros]:  
assumes "f holomorphic\_on A" "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ c =  
0 ∨ f z ≠ -d / c"  
shows "(λx. moebius a b c d (f x)) holomorphic\_on A"  
⟨proof⟩

lemma analytic\_on\_moebius [analytic\_intros]:  
assumes "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0" "c = 0 ∨ -d / c ∉ A"  
shows "(moebius a b c d) analytic\_on A"  
⟨proof⟩

```

lemma analytic_on_moebius' [analytic_intros]:
  assumes "f analytic_on A" "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ c = 0 ∨
f z ≠ -d / c"
  shows "(λx. moebius a b c d (f x)) analytic_on A"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma moebius_has_field_derivative:
  assumes "c = 0 ∨ x ≠ -d / c" "c ≠ 0 ∨ d ≠ 0"
  shows "(moebius a b c d has_field_derivative (a * d - b * c) / (c
* x + d) ^ 2) (at x within A)"
⟨proof⟩

```

## 2.2 Unimodular Möbius transforms

A unimodular Möbius transform has integer coefficients and determinant  $\pm 1$ .

```

locale unimodular_moebius_transform =
  fixes a b c d :: int
  assumes unimodular: "a * d - b * c = 1"
begin

```

```

definition  $\varphi$  :: "complex ⇒ complex" where
  " $\varphi$  = moebius (of_int a) (of_int b) (of_int c) (of_int d)"

```

```

lemma cnj_ $\varphi$ : " $\varphi$  (cnj z) = cnj ( $\varphi$  z)"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform:
  "Im ( $\varphi$  z) = Im z / norm (of_int c * z + of_int d) ^ 2"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform_pos_aux:
  assumes "Im z ≠ 0"
  shows "of_int c * z + of_int d ≠ 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform_pos: "Im z > 0 ⇒ Im ( $\varphi$  z) > 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform_neg: "Im z < 0 ⇒ Im ( $\varphi$  z) < 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform_zero_iff [simp]: "Im ( $\varphi$  z) = 0 ⇔ Im z = 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform_pos_iff [simp]: "Im ( $\varphi$  z) > 0 ⇔ Im z > 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma Im_transform_neg_iff [simp]: "Im ( $\varphi$  z) < 0 ⇔ Im z < 0"

```

```

    <proof>

lemma Im_transform_nonneg_iff [simp]: "Im (φ z) ≥ 0 ↔ Im z ≥ 0"
  <proof>

lemma Im_transform_nonpos_iff [simp]: "Im (φ z) ≤ 0 ↔ Im z ≤ 0"
  <proof>

lemma transform_in_reals_iff [simp]: "φ z ∈ ℝ ↔ z ∈ ℝ"
  <proof>

end

lemma Im_one_over_neg_iff [simp]: "Im (1 / z) < 0 ↔ Im z > 0"
  <proof>

locale inverse_unimodular_moebius_transform = unimodular_moebius_transform
begin

sublocale inv: unimodular_moebius_transform d "-b" "-c" a
  <proof>

lemma inv_φ:
  assumes "of_int c * z + of_int d ≠ 0"
  shows "inv.φ (φ z) = z"
  <proof>

lemma inv_φ':
  assumes "of_int c * z - of_int a ≠ 0"
  shows "φ (inv.φ z) = z"
  <proof>

end

```

## 2.3 The modular group

### 2.3.1 Definition

We define the modular group as a quotient of all integer tuples  $(a, b, c, d)$  with  $ad - bc = 1$  over a relation that identifies  $(a, b, c, d)$  with  $(-a, -b, -c, -d)$ .

```

definition modgrp_rel :: "int × int × int × int ⇒ int × int × int
× int ⇒ bool" where
  "modgrp_rel =
    (λ(a,b,c,d) (a',b',c',d'). a * d - b * c = 1 ∧
      ((a,b,c,d) = (a',b',c',d') ∨ (a,b,c,d)
= (-a',-b',-c',-d')))"

```

```

lemma modgrp_rel_same_iff: "modgrp_rel x x  $\longleftrightarrow$  (case x of (a,b,c,d)
 $\Rightarrow$  a * d - b * c = 1)"
  <proof>

lemma part_equivp_modgrp_rel: "part_equivp modgrp_rel"
  <proof>

quotient_type modgrp = "int  $\times$  int  $\times$  int  $\times$  int" / partial: modgrp_rel
  <proof>

instantiation modgrp :: one
begin

lift_definition one_modgrp :: modgrp is "(1, 0, 0, 1)"
  <proof>

instance <proof>
end

instantiation modgrp :: times
begin

lift_definition times_modgrp :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp"
  is " $\lambda$ (a,b,c,d) (a',b',c',d'). (a * a' + b * c', a * b' + b * d', c *
a' + d * c', c * b' + d * d')"
  <proof>

instance <proof>
end

instantiation modgrp :: inverse
begin

lift_definition inverse_modgrp :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp"
  is " $\lambda$ (a, b, c, d). (d, -b, -c, a)"
  <proof>

definition divide_modgrp :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp" where
  "divide_modgrp x y = x * inverse y"

instance <proof>

end

interpretation modgrp: Groups.group "(*)" :: modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  _" 1 inverse

```

*<proof>*

**instance** *modgrp* :: *monoid\_mult*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *inverse\_power\_modgrp*: "*inverse (x ^ n :: modgrp) = inverse x ^ n*"  
*<proof>*

### 2.3.2 Basic operations

Application to a field

**lift\_definition** *apply\_modgrp* :: "*modgrp*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a* :: *field*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a*" is  
" $\lambda(a,b,c,d). \text{moebius (of\_int a) (of\_int b) (of\_int c) (of\_int d)}$ "  
*<proof>*

The shift operation  $z \mapsto z + n$

**lift\_definition** *shift\_modgrp* :: "*int*  $\Rightarrow$  *modgrp*" is " $\lambda n. (1, n, 0, 1)$ "  
*<proof>*

The shift operation  $z \mapsto z + 1$

**lift\_definition** *T\_modgrp* :: *modgrp* is " $(1, 1, 0, 1)$ "  
*<proof>*

The operation  $z \mapsto -\frac{1}{z}$

**lift\_definition** *S\_modgrp* :: *modgrp* is " $(0, -1, 1, 0)$ "  
*<proof>*

Whether or not the transformation has a pole in the complex plane

**lift\_definition** *is\_singular\_modgrp* :: "*modgrp*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d). c \neq 0$ "  
*<proof>*

The position of the transformation's pole in the complex plane (if it has one)

**lift\_definition** *pole\_modgrp* :: "*modgrp*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a* :: *field*" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d). -\text{of\_int } d / \text{of\_int } c$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *pole\_modgrp\_in\_Reals*: "*pole\_modgrp f*  $\in$  (*R* :: '*a* :: *real\_field set*)"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *Im\_pole\_modgrp [simp]*: "*Im (pole\_modgrp f) = 0*"  
*<proof>*

The complex number to which complex infinity is mapped by the transformation. This is undefined if the transformation maps complex infinity to itself.

**lift\_definition** pole\_image\_modgrp :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: field" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d).$   
of\_int a / of\_int c"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** Im\_pole\_image\_modgrp [simp]: "Im (pole\_image\_modgrp f) = 0"  
*<proof>*

The normalised coefficients of the transformation. The convention that is chosen is that  $c$  is always non-negative, and if  $c$  is zero then  $d$  is positive.

**lift\_definition** modgrp\_a :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  int" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d).$  if  $c < 0 \vee c = 0 \wedge d < 0$  then  $-a$  else  $a$ "  
*<proof>*

**lift\_definition** modgrp\_b :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  int" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d).$  if  $c < 0 \vee c = 0 \wedge d < 0$  then  $-b$  else  $b$ "  
*<proof>*

**lift\_definition** modgrp\_c :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  int" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d).$  |c|"  
*<proof>*

**lift\_definition** modgrp\_d :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  int" is " $\lambda(a,b,c,d).$  if  $c < 0 \vee c = 0 \wedge d < 0$  then  $-d$  else  $d$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** modgrp\_abcd\_S [simp]:  
"modgrp\_a S\_modgrp = 0" "modgrp\_b S\_modgrp = -1" "modgrp\_c S\_modgrp = 1" "modgrp\_d S\_modgrp = 0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** modgrp\_abcd\_T [simp]:  
"modgrp\_a T\_modgrp = 1" "modgrp\_b T\_modgrp = 1" "modgrp\_c T\_modgrp = 0" "modgrp\_d T\_modgrp = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** modgrp\_abcd\_shift [simp]:  
"modgrp\_a (shift\_modgrp n) = 1" "modgrp\_b (shift\_modgrp n) = n"  
"modgrp\_c (shift\_modgrp n) = 0" "modgrp\_d (shift\_modgrp n) = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** modgrp\_c\_shift\_left [simp]:  
"modgrp\_c (shift\_modgrp n \* f) = modgrp\_c f"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** modgrp\_d\_shift\_left [simp]:  
"modgrp\_d (shift\_modgrp n \* f) = modgrp\_d f"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** modgrp\_abcd\_det: "modgrp\_a x \* modgrp\_d x - modgrp\_b x \* modgrp\_c x = 1"

*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_c\_nonneg:** "modgrp\_c x  $\geq$  0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_a\_nz\_or\_b\_nz:** "modgrp\_a x  $\neq$  0  $\vee$  modgrp\_b x  $\neq$  0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_c\_nz\_or\_d\_nz:** "modgrp\_c x  $\neq$  0  $\vee$  modgrp\_d x  $\neq$  0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_cd\_signs:** "modgrp\_c x  $>$  0  $\vee$  modgrp\_c x = 0  $\wedge$  modgrp\_d x  $>$  0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma apply\_modgrp\_altdef:**  
"(apply\_modgrp x :: 'a :: field  $\Rightarrow$  \_) =  
 moebius (of\_int (modgrp\_a x)) (of\_int (modgrp\_b x)) (of\_int (modgrp\_c  
 x)) (of\_int (modgrp\_d x))"  
*<proof>*

Converting a quadruple of numbers into an element of the modular group.

**lift\_definition modgrp :: "int  $\Rightarrow$  int  $\Rightarrow$  int  $\Rightarrow$  int  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp" is**  
"lambda b c d. if a \* d - b \* c = 1 then (a, b, c, d) else (1, 0, 0, 1)"  
*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_wrong:** "a \* d - b \* c  $\neq$  1  $\implies$  modgrp a b c d = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_cong:**  
 assumes "modgrp\_rel (a,b,c,d) (a',b',c',d)'"  
 shows "modgrp a b c d = modgrp a' b' c' d'"  
*<proof>*

**lemma modgrp\_abcd [simp]:** "modgrp (modgrp\_a x) (modgrp\_b x) (modgrp\_c  
 x) (modgrp\_d x) = x"  
*<proof>*

**lemma**  
 assumes "a \* d - b \* c = 1"  
 shows modgrp\_c\_modgrp: "modgrp\_c (modgrp a b c d) = |c|"  
 and modgrp\_a\_modgrp: "modgrp\_a (modgrp a b c d) = (if c < 0  $\vee$  c  
 = 0  $\wedge$  d < 0 then -a else a)"  
 and modgrp\_b\_modgrp: "modgrp\_b (modgrp a b c d) = (if c < 0  $\vee$  c  
 = 0  $\wedge$  d < 0 then -b else b)"  
 and modgrp\_d\_modgrp: "modgrp\_d (modgrp a b c d) = (if c < 0  $\vee$  c  
 = 0  $\wedge$  d < 0 then -d else d)"  
*<proof>*

### 2.3.3 Basic properties

```
lemma continuous_on_apply_modgrp [continuous_intros]:
  fixes g :: "'a :: topological_space  $\Rightarrow$  'b :: real_normed_field"
  assumes "continuous_on A g" " $\wedge z. z \in A \implies \neg \text{is\_singular\_modgrp } f \vee g z \neq \text{pole\_modgrp } f$ "
  shows "continuous_on A ( $\lambda z. \text{apply\_modgrp } f (g z)$ )"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma holomorphic_on_apply_modgrp [holomorphic_intros]:
  assumes "g holomorphic_on A" " $\wedge z. z \in A \implies \neg \text{is\_singular\_modgrp } f \vee g z \neq \text{pole\_modgrp } f$ "
  shows " $(\lambda z. \text{apply\_modgrp } f (g z))$  holomorphic_on A"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma analytic_on_apply_modgrp [analytic_intros]:
  assumes "g analytic_on A" " $\wedge z. z \in A \implies \neg \text{is\_singular\_modgrp } f \vee g z \neq \text{pole\_modgrp } f$ "
  shows " $(\lambda z. \text{apply\_modgrp } f (g z))$  analytic_on A"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma isCont_apply_modgrp [continuous_intros]:
  fixes z :: "'a :: real_normed_field"
  assumes " $\neg \text{is\_singular\_modgrp } f \vee z \neq \text{pole\_modgrp } f$ "
  shows "isCont (apply_modgrp f) z"
  <proof>
```

```
lemmas tendsto_apply_modgrp [tendsto_intros] = isCont_tendsto_compose[OF isCont_apply_modgrp]
```

```
lift_definition diff_scale_factor_modgrp :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: field  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a" is
  " $\lambda(a,b,c,d) w z. (\text{of\_int } c * w + \text{of\_int } d) * (\text{of\_int } c * z + \text{of\_int } d)$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma diff_scale_factor_modgrp_commutates:
  "diff_scale_factor_modgrp f w z = diff_scale_factor_modgrp f z w"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma diff_scale_factor_modgrp_zero_iff:
  fixes w z :: "'a :: field_char_0"
  shows "diff_scale_factor_modgrp f w z = 0  $\iff$  is_singular_modgrp f  $\wedge$  pole_modgrp f  $\in$  {w, z}"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma apply_modgrp_diff_eq:
  fixes g :: modgrp
  defines "f  $\equiv$  apply_modgrp g"
  assumes *: " $\neg \text{is\_singular\_modgrp } g \vee \text{pole\_modgrp } g \notin \{w, z\}$ "
```

```

shows "f w - f z = (w - z) / diff_scale_factor_modgrp g w z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma norm_modgrp_dividend_ge:
  fixes z :: complex
  shows "norm (of_int c * z + of_int d) ≥ |c * Im z|"
⟨proof⟩

lemma diff_scale_factor_modgrp_altdef:
  fixes g :: modgrp
  defines "c ≡ modgrp_c g" and "d ≡ modgrp_d g"
  shows "diff_scale_factor_modgrp g w z = (of_int c * w + of_int d) *
(of_int c * z + of_int d)"
⟨proof⟩

lemma norm_diff_scale_factor_modgrp_ge_complex:
  fixes w z :: complex
  assumes "w ≠ z"
  shows "norm (diff_scale_factor_modgrp g w z) ≥ of_int (modgrp_c g)
^ 2 * |Im w * Im z|"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_shift_modgrp [simp]: "apply_modgrp (shift_modgrp n) z = z
+ of_int n"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_T [simp]: "apply_modgrp T_modgrp z = z + 1"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_S [simp]: "apply_modgrp S_modgrp z = -1 / z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_1 [simp]: "apply_modgrp 1 z = z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_mult_aux:
  fixes z :: "'a :: field_char_0"
  assumes ns: "c' = 0 ∨ z ≠ -d' / c'"
  assumes det: "a * d - b * c = 1" "a' * d' - b' * c' = 1"
  shows "moebius a b c d (moebius a' b' c' d' z) =
moebius (a * a' + b * c') (a * b' + b * d')
(c * a' + d * c') (c * b' + d * d') z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_mult:
  fixes z :: "'a :: field_char_0"
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp y ∨ z ≠ pole_modgrp y"
  shows "apply_modgrp (x * y) z = apply_modgrp x (apply_modgrp y z)"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma is_singular_modgrp_altdef: "is_singular_modgrp x  $\longleftrightarrow$  modgrp_c
x  $\neq$  0"
  <proof>

lemma not_is_singular_modgrpD:
  assumes " $\neg$ is_singular_modgrp x"
  shows "x = shift_modgrp (sgn (modgrp_a x) * modgrp_b x)"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_inverse [simp]: "is_singular_modgrp (inverse
x)  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_singular_modgrp x"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_S_left_iff [simp]: "is_singular_modgrp (S_modgrp
* f)  $\longleftrightarrow$  modgrp_a f  $\neq$  0"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_S_right_iff [simp]: "is_singular_modgrp (f *
S_modgrp)  $\longleftrightarrow$  modgrp_d f  $\neq$  0"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_T_left_iff [simp]:
  "is_singular_modgrp (T_modgrp * f)  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_singular_modgrp f"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_T_right_iff [simp]:
  "is_singular_modgrp (f * T_modgrp)  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_singular_modgrp f"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_shift_left_iff [simp]:
  "is_singular_modgrp (shift_modgrp n * f)  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_singular_modgrp f"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_shift_right_iff [simp]:
  "is_singular_modgrp (f * shift_modgrp n)  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_singular_modgrp f"
  <proof>

lemma pole_modgrp_inverse [simp]: "pole_modgrp (inverse x) = pole_image_modgrp
x"
  <proof>

lemma pole_image_modgrp_inverse [simp]: "pole_image_modgrp (inverse x)
= pole_modgrp x"
  <proof>

lemma pole_image_modgrp_in_Reals: "pole_image_modgrp x  $\in$  ( $\mathbb{R}$  :: 'a ::
{real_field, field} set)"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma apply_modgrp_inverse_eqI:
  fixes x y :: "'a :: field_char_0"
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ y ≠ pole_modgrp f" "apply_modgrp
f y = x"
  shows "apply_modgrp (inverse f) x = y"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_eq_iff [simp]:
  fixes x y :: "'a :: field_char_0"
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ x ≠ pole_modgrp f ∧ y ≠ pole_modgrp
f"
  shows "apply_modgrp f x = apply_modgrp f y ↔ x = y"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma is_singular_modgrp_times_aux:
  assumes det: "a * d - b * c = 1" "a' * d' - b' * (c' :: int) = 1"
  shows "(c * a' + d * c' ≠ 0) ↔ ((c = 0 → c' ≠ 0) ∧ (c = 0 ∨
c' = 0 ∨ -d * c' ≠ a' * c))"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma is_singular_modgrp_times_iff:
  "is_singular_modgrp (x * y) ↔
  (is_singular_modgrp x ∨ is_singular_modgrp y) ∧
  (¬is_singular_modgrp x ∨ ¬is_singular_modgrp y ∨ pole_modgrp x
≠ (pole_image_modgrp y :: real))"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma shift_modgrp_1: "shift_modgrp 1 = T_modgrp"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma shift_modgrp_eq_iff: "shift_modgrp n = shift_modgrp m ↔ n =
m"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma shift_modgrp_neq_S [simp]: "shift_modgrp n ≠ S_modgrp"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma S_neq_shift_modgrp [simp]: "S_modgrp ≠ shift_modgrp n"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma shift_modgrp_eq_T_iff [simp]: "shift_modgrp n = T_modgrp ↔ n
= 1"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma T_eq_shift_modgrp_iff [simp]: "T_modgrp = shift_modgrp n ↔ n
= 1"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

**lemma** *shift\_modgrp\_0* [*simp*]: "shift\_modgrp 0 = 1"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *shift\_modgrp\_add*: "shift\_modgrp (m + n) = shift\_modgrp m \* shift\_modgrp n"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *shift\_modgrp\_minus*: "shift\_modgrp (-m) = inverse (shift\_modgrp m)"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *shift\_modgrp\_power*: "shift\_modgrp n ^ m = shift\_modgrp (n \* m)"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *shift\_modgrp\_power\_int*: "shift\_modgrp n powi m = shift\_modgrp (n \* m)"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *shift\_shift\_modgrp*: "shift\_modgrp n \* (shift\_modgrp m \* x) = shift\_modgrp (n + m) \* x"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *shift\_modgrp\_conv\_T\_power*: "shift\_modgrp n = T\_modgrp powi n"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_S\_S* [*simp*]: "S\_modgrp \* S\_modgrp = 1"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *inverse\_S\_modgrp* [*simp*]: "inverse S\_modgrp = S\_modgrp"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_S\_S\_'* [*simp*]: "S\_modgrp \* (S\_modgrp \* x) = x"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_S\_power*: "S\_modgrp ^ n = (if even n then 1 else S\_modgrp)"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_S\_S\_power\_int*: "S\_modgrp powi n = (if even n then 1 else S\_modgrp)"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *not\_is\_singular\_1\_modgrp* [*simp*]: "¬is\_singular\_modgrp 1"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *not\_is\_singular\_T\_modgrp* [*simp*]: "¬is\_singular\_modgrp T\_modgrp"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

```

lemma not_is_singular_shift_modgrp [simp]: "¬is_singular_modgrp (shift_modgrp
n)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma is_singular_S_modgrp [simp]: "is_singular_modgrp S_modgrp"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_modgrp_S [simp]: "pole_modgrp S_modgrp = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_modgrp_1 [simp]: "pole_modgrp 1 = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_modgrp_T [simp]: "pole_modgrp T_modgrp = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_modgrp_shift [simp]: "pole_modgrp (shift_modgrp n) = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_image_modgrp_1 [simp]: "pole_image_modgrp 1 = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_image_modgrp_T [simp]: "pole_image_modgrp T_modgrp = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_image_modgrp_shift [simp]: "pole_image_modgrp (shift_modgrp
n) = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma pole_image_modgrp_S [simp]: "pole_image_modgrp S_modgrp = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma minus_minus_power2_eq: "(-x - y :: 'a :: ring_1) ^ 2 = (x + y)
^ 2"
  ⟨proof⟩

lift_definition deriv_modgrp :: "modgrp ⇒ 'a :: field ⇒ 'a" is
  "λ(a,b,c,d) x. inverse ((of_int c * x + of_int d) ^ 2)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma deriv_modgrp_nonzero:
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ (x :: 'a :: field_char_0) ≠ pole_modgrp
f"
  shows "deriv_modgrp f x ≠ 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma deriv_modgrp_altdef:
  "deriv_modgrp f z = inverse (of_int (modgrp_c f) * z + of_int (modgrp_d
f)) ^ 2"

```

```

⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_has_field_derivative [derivative_intros]:
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ x ≠ pole_modgrp f"
  shows "(apply_modgrp f has_field_derivative deriv_modgrp f x) (at
x within A)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_has_field_derivative' [derivative_intros]:
  assumes "(g has_field_derivative g') (at x within A)"
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ g x ≠ pole_modgrp f"
  shows "((λx. apply_modgrp f (g x)) has_field_derivative deriv_modgrp
f (g x) * g')
(at x within A)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma modgrp_a_1 [simp]: "modgrp_a 1 = 1"
  and modgrp_b_1 [simp]: "modgrp_b 1 = 0"
  and modgrp_c_1 [simp]: "modgrp_c 1 = 0"
  and modgrp_d_1 [simp]: "modgrp_d 1 = 1"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma modgrp_c_0:
  assumes "a * d = 1"
  shows "modgrp a b 0 d = shift_modgrp (if a > 0 then b else -b)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma not_singular_modgrpD:
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f"
  shows "f = shift_modgrp (modgrp_b f)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma S_conv_modgrp: "S_modgrp = modgrp 0 (-1) 1 0"
  and T_conv_modgrp: "T_modgrp = modgrp 1 1 0 1"
  and shift_conv_modgrp: "shift_modgrp n = modgrp 1 n 0 1"
  and one_conv_modgrp: "1 = modgrp 1 0 0 1"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma modgrp_rel_reflI: "(case x of (a,b,c,d) ⇒ a * d - b * c = 1) ⇒
x = y ⇒ modgrp_rel x y"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma modgrp_times:
  assumes "a * d - b * c = 1"
  assumes "a' * d' - b' * c' = 1"
  shows "modgrp a b c d * modgrp a' b' c' d' =
modgrp (a * a' + b * c') (a * b' + b * d') (c * a' + d * c')
(c * b' + d * d')"

```

```

    <proof>

lemma modgrp_inverse:
  assumes "a * d - b * c = 1"
  shows "inverse (modgrp a b c d) = modgrp d (-b) (-c) a"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_a_mult_shift [simp]: "modgrp_a (f * shift_modgrp m) = modgrp_a
f"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_b_mult_shift [simp]: "modgrp_b (f * shift_modgrp m) = modgrp_a
f * m + modgrp_b f"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_c_mult_shift [simp]: "modgrp_c (f * shift_modgrp m) = modgrp_c
f"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_d_mult_shift [simp]: "modgrp_d (f * shift_modgrp m) = modgrp_c
f * m + modgrp_d f"
  <proof>

lemma coprime_modgrp_c_d: "coprime (modgrp_c f) (modgrp_d f)"
  <proof>

context unimodular_moebius_transform
begin

lift_definition as_modgrp :: modgrp is "(a, b, c, d)"
  <proof>

lemma as_modgrp_altdef: "as_modgrp = modgrp a b c d"
  <proof>

lemma  $\varphi$ _as_modgrp: " $\varphi$  = apply_modgrp as_modgrp"
  <proof>

end

interpretation modgrp: unimodular_moebius_transform "modgrp_a x" "modgrp_b
x" "modgrp_c x" "modgrp_d x"
  rewrites "modgrp.as_modgrp = x" and "modgrp. $\varphi$  = apply_modgrp x"
  <proof>

```

## 2.4 Code generation

```
code_datatype modgrp
```

```

lemma one_modgrp_code [code]: "1 = modgrp 1 0 0 1"
  and S_modgrp_code [code]: "S_modgrp = modgrp 0 (-1) 1 0"
  and T_modgrp_code [code]: "T_modgrp = modgrp 1 1 0 1"
  and shift_modgrp_code [code]: "shift_modgrp n = modgrp 1 n 0 1"
  <proof>

lemma inverse_modgrp_code [code]: "inverse (modgrp a b c d) = modgrp
d (-b) (-c) a"
  <proof>

lemma times_modgrp_code [code]:
  "modgrp a b c d * modgrp a' b' c' d' = (
    if a * d - b * c ≠ 1 then modgrp a' b' c' d'
    else if a' * d' - b' * c' ≠ 1 then modgrp a b c d
    else modgrp (a * a' + b * c') (a * b' + b * d') (c * a' + d * c')
(c * b' + d * d'))"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_a_code [code]:
  "modgrp_a (modgrp a b c d) = (if a * d - b * c = 1 then if c < 0 ∨ c
= 0 ∧ d < 0 then -a else a else 1)"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_b_code [code]:
  "modgrp_b (modgrp a b c d) = (if a * d - b * c = 1 then if c < 0 ∨ c
= 0 ∧ d < 0 then -b else b else 0)"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_c_code [code]:
  "modgrp_c (modgrp a b c d) = (if a * d - b * c = 1 then |c| else 0)"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_d_code [code]:
  "modgrp_d (modgrp a b c d) = (if a * d - b * c = 1 then if c < 0 ∨ c
= 0 ∧ d < 0 then -d else d else 1)"
  <proof>

lemma apply_modgrp_code [code]:
  "apply_modgrp (modgrp a b c d) z =
  (if a * d - b * c ≠ 1 then z else (of_int a * z + of_int b) / (of_int
c * z + of_int d))"
  <proof>

lemma is_singular_modgrp_code [code]:
  "is_singular_modgrp (modgrp a b c d) ↔ a * d - b * c = 1 ∧ c ≠ 0"
  <proof>

lemma pole_modgrp_code [code]:
  "pole_modgrp (modgrp a b c d) = (if a * d - b * c = 1 then -of_int d

```

`/ of_int c else 0)"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `pole_image_modgrp_code [code]:`  
`"pole_image_modgrp (modgrp a b c d) =`  
`(if a * d - b * c = 1  $\wedge$  c  $\neq$  0 then of_int a / of_int c else 0)"`  
`<proof>`

The following will be needed later to define the slash operator.

**definition** `modgrp_factor :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where`  
`"modgrp_factor g z = of_int (modgrp_c g) * z + of_int (modgrp_d g)"`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_1 [simp]: "modgrp_factor 1 z = 1"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_shift [simp]: "modgrp_factor (shift_modgrp n) z =`  
`1"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_T [simp]: "modgrp_factor T_modgrp z = 1"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_S [simp]: "modgrp_factor S_modgrp z = z"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_shift_right [simp]:`  
`"modgrp_factor (f * shift_modgrp n) z = modgrp_factor f (z + of_int`  
`n)"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_shift_left [simp]:`  
`"modgrp_factor (shift_modgrp n * f) z = modgrp_factor f z"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_T_right [simp]:`  
`"modgrp_factor (f * T_modgrp) z = modgrp_factor f (z + 1)"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_T_left [simp]:`  
`"modgrp_factor (T_modgrp * f) z = modgrp_factor f z"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `has_field_derivative_modgrp_factor [derivative_intros]:`  
`assumes "(f has_field_derivative f') (at x)"`  
`shows "(( $\lambda$ x. modgrp_factor g (f x)) has_field_derivative (of_int`  
`(modgrp_c g) * f')) (at x)"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `modgrp_factor_analytic [analytic_intros]: "modgrp_factor g analytic_on`

*A*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_factor\_meromorphic* [*meromorphic\_intros*]: "*modgrp\_factor*  
*h meromorphic\_on A*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_factor\_nonzero* [*simp*]:  
 assumes "*Im z ≠ 0*"  
 shows "*modgrp\_factor g z ≠ 0*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *tendsto\_modgrp\_factor* [*tendsto\_intros*]:  
 "*(f → c) F ⇒ ((λx. modgrp\_factor g (f x)) → modgrp\_factor*  
*g c) F*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *minus\_diff\_power\_even*:  
 assumes "*even k*"  
 shows "*(-a - b) ^ k = (a + b :: 'a :: ring\_1) ^ k*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *minus\_diff\_power\_int\_even*:  
 assumes "*even k*"  
 shows "*(-a - b) powi k = (a + b :: 'a :: field) powi k*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

## 2.5 The slash operator

The typical definition in the literature is that, for a function  $f : \mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  and an element  $\gamma$  of the modular group, the slash operator of weight  $k$  is defined as  $(f|_k \gamma)(z) = (cz + d)^{-k} f(\gamma z)$ .

This has notational advantages, but for formalisation, we think the following is a bit easier for now. Note that in practice,  $k$  will always be even, and we do in fact need it to be even here because otherwise the concept would not be well-defined since  $(c, d)$  is only determined up to a factor  $\pm 1$ .

**lift\_definition** *modgrp\_slash* :: "*modgrp ⇒ int ⇒ complex ⇒ complex*" is  
 " $(\lambda(a,b,c,d) k z. \text{if even } k \text{ then } (\text{of\_int } c * z + \text{of\_int } d) \text{ powi } k \text{ else } 0)$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_slash\_altdef*:  
 "*modgrp\_slash f k z = (if even k then modgrp\_factor f z powi k else 0)*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modgrp\_slash\_1* [*simp*]: "*even k ⇒ modgrp\_slash 1 k z = 1*"  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

```
lemma modgrp_slash_shift [simp]: "even k  $\implies$  modgrp_slash (shift_modgrp
n) k z = 1"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma modgrp_slash_T [simp]: "even k  $\implies$  modgrp_slash T_modgrp k z =
1"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma modgrp_slash_S [simp]: "even k  $\implies$  modgrp_slash S_modgrp k z =
z powi k"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma modgrp_slash_mult:
  assumes "z  $\notin$   $\mathbb{R}$ "
  shows "modgrp_slash (f * g) k z = modgrp_slash f k (apply_modgrp g
z) * modgrp_slash g k z"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma modgrp_slash_meromorphic [meromorphic_intros]: "modgrp_slash f
k meromorphic_on A"
  <proof>
```

## 2.6 Representation as product of powers of generators

```
definition modgrp_from_gens :: "int option list  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp" where
  "modgrp_from_gens xs = prod_list (map ( $\lambda$ x. case x of None  $\Rightarrow$  S_modgrp
| Some n  $\Rightarrow$  shift_modgrp n) xs)"
```

```
lemma modgrp_from_gens_Nil [simp]:
  "modgrp_from_gens [] = 1"
  and modgrp_from_gens_append [simp]:
  "modgrp_from_gens (xs @ ys) = modgrp_from_gens xs * modgrp_from_gens
ys"
  and modgrp_from_gens_Cons1 [simp]:
  "modgrp_from_gens (None # xs) = S_modgrp * modgrp_from_gens xs"
  and modgrp_from_gens_Cons2 [simp]:
  "modgrp_from_gens (Some n # xs) = shift_modgrp n * modgrp_from_gens
xs"
  and modgrp_from_gens_Cons:
  "modgrp_from_gens (x # xs) =
(case x of None  $\Rightarrow$  S_modgrp | Some n  $\Rightarrow$  shift_modgrp n) *
modgrp_from_gens xs"
  <proof>
```

```
definition invert_modgrp_gens :: "int option list  $\Rightarrow$  int option list"
  where "invert_modgrp_gens = rev  $\circ$  map (map_option uminus)"
```

```
lemma invert_modgrp_gens_Nil [simp]:
```

```

    "invert_modgrp_gens [] = []"
  and invert_modgrp_gens_append [simp]:
    "invert_modgrp_gens (xs @ ys) = invert_modgrp_gens ys @ invert_modgrp_gens
xs"
  and invert_modgrp_gens_Cons1 [simp]:
    "invert_modgrp_gens (None # xs) = invert_modgrp_gens xs @ [None]"
  and invert_modgrp_gens_Cons2 [simp]:
    "invert_modgrp_gens (Some n # xs) = invert_modgrp_gens xs @ [Some
(-n)]"
  and invert_modgrp_gens_Cons:
    "invert_modgrp_gens (x # xs) = invert_modgrp_gens xs @ [map_option
uminus x]"
    <proof>

lemma modgrp_from_gens_invert [simp]:
  "modgrp_from_gens (invert_modgrp_gens xs) = inverse (modgrp_from_gens
xs)"
  <proof>

function modgrp_genseq :: "int ⇒ int ⇒ int ⇒ int ⇒ int option list"
where
  "modgrp_genseq a b c d =
  (if c = 0 then let b' = (if a > 0 then b else -b) in [Some b']
  else modgrp_genseq (-a * (d div c) + b) (-a) (d mod c) (-c) @ [None,
Some (d div c)])"
  <proof>
termination
  <proof>

lemmas [simp del] = modgrp_genseq.simps

lemma modgrp_genseq_c_0: "modgrp_genseq a b 0 d = (let b' = (if a > 0
then b else -b) in [Some b'])"
  and modgrp_genseq_c_nz:
    "c ≠ 0 ⇒ modgrp_genseq a b c d =
    (let q = d div c in modgrp_genseq (-a * q + b) (-a) (d mod
c) (-c) @ [None, Some q])"
    <proof>

lemma modgrp_genseq_code [code]:
  "modgrp_genseq a b c d =
  (if c = 0 then [Some (if a > 0 then b else -b)]
  else (let q = d div c in modgrp_genseq (-a * q + b) (-a) (d mod
c) (-c) @ [None, Some q]))"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_genseq_correct:
  assumes "a * d - b * c = 1"
  shows "modgrp_from_gens (modgrp_genseq a b c d) = modgrp a b c d"

```

```

⟨proof⟩

lemma filterlim_apply_modgrp_at:
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp g ∨ z ≠ pole_modgrp g"
  shows "filterlim (apply_modgrp g) (at (apply_modgrp g z)) (at (z ::
'a :: real_normed_field))"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_neq_pole_image [simp]:
  "is_singular_modgrp g ⇒ z ≠ pole_modgrp g ⇒
  apply_modgrp g (z :: 'a :: field_char_0) ≠ pole_image_modgrp g"
⟨proof⟩

lemma image_apply_modgrp_conv_vimage:
  fixes A :: "'a :: field_char_0 set"
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ pole_modgrp f ∉ A"
  defines "S ≡ (if is_singular_modgrp f then -{pole_image_modgrp f ::
'a} else UNIV)"
  shows "apply_modgrp f ' A = apply_modgrp (inverse f) -' A ∩ S"
⟨proof⟩

lemma apply_modgrp_open_map:
  fixes A :: "'a :: real_normed_field set"
  assumes "open A" "¬is_singular_modgrp f ∨ pole_modgrp f ∉ A"
  shows "open (apply_modgrp f ' A)"
⟨proof⟩

lemma filtermap_at_apply_modgrp:
  fixes z :: "'a :: real_normed_field"
  assumes "¬is_singular_modgrp g ∨ z ≠ pole_modgrp g"
  shows "filtermap (apply_modgrp g) (at z) = at (apply_modgrp g z)"
⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_moebius_zero:
  assumes "a ≠ 0" "a * d - b * c ≠ 0"
  shows "zorder (moebius a b c d) (-b / a) = 1"
⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_moebius_pole:
  assumes "c ≠ 0" "a * d - b * c ≠ 0"
  shows "zorder (moebius a b c d) (-d / c) = -1"
⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_moebius:
  assumes "c = 0 ∨ z ≠ -d / c" "a * d - b * c ≠ 0"
  shows "zorder (λx. moebius a b c d x - moebius a b c d z) z = 1"
⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_apply_modgrp:

```

```

assumes " $\neg$ is_singular_modgrp g  $\vee$  z  $\neq$  pole_modgrp g"
shows "zorder ( $\lambda$ x. apply_modgrp g x - apply_modgrp g z) z = 1"
<proof>

```

```

lemma zorder_fls_modgrp_pole:
assumes "is_singular_modgrp f"
shows "zorder (apply_modgrp f) (pole_modgrp f) = -1"
<proof>

```

## 2.7 Induction rules in terms of generators

Theorem 2.1

```

lemma modgrp_induct_S_shift [case_names id S shift]:
assumes "P 1"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (S_modgrp * x)"
          " $\bigwedge$ x n. P x  $\implies$  P (shift_modgrp n * x)"
shows "P x"
<proof>

```

```

lemma modgrp_induct [case_names id S T inv_T]:
assumes "P 1"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (S_modgrp * x)"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (T_modgrp * x)"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (inverse T_modgrp * x)"
shows "P x"
<proof>

```

```

lemma modgrp_induct_S_shift' [case_names id S shift]:
assumes "P 1"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (x * S_modgrp)"
          " $\bigwedge$ x n. P x  $\implies$  P (x * shift_modgrp n)"
shows "P x"
<proof>

```

```

lemma modgrp_induct' [case_names id S T inv_T]:
assumes "P 1"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (x * S_modgrp)"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (x * T_modgrp)"
          " $\bigwedge$ x. P x  $\implies$  P (x * inverse T_modgrp)"
shows "P x"
<proof>

```

```

lemma moebius_uminus1: "moebius (-a) b c d = moebius a (-b) (-c) (-d)"
<proof>

```

```

lemma moebius_shift:
"moebius a b c d (z + of_int n) = moebius a (a * of_int n + b) c (c
* of_int n + d) z"
<proof>

```

```

lemma moebius_eq_shift: "moebius 1 (of_int n) 0 1 z = z + of_int n"
  <proof>

lemma moebius_S:
  assumes "a * d - b * c ≠ 0" "z ≠ 0"
  shows "moebius a b c d (-(1 / z)) = moebius b (- a) d (- c) (z ::
'a :: field)"
  <proof>

lemma moebius_eq_S: "moebius 0 1 (-1) 0 z = -1 / z"
  <proof>

definition apply_modgrp' :: "modgrp ⇒ 'a × 'a ⇒ 'a × 'a :: ring_1"
  where "apply_modgrp' f =
    (λ(x,y). (of_int (modgrp_a f) * x + of_int (modgrp_b f) * y,
              of_int (modgrp_c f) * x + of_int (modgrp_d f) * y))"

lemma apply_modgrp'_z_one:
  assumes "z ∉ ℝ"
  shows "apply_modgrp' f (z, 1) = (modgrp_factor f z * apply_modgrp
f z, modgrp_factor f z)"
  <proof>



## 2.8 Subgroups



locale modgrp_subgroup =
  fixes G :: "modgrp set"
  assumes one_in_G [simp, intro]: "1 ∈ G"
  assumes times_in_G [simp, intro]: "x ∈ G ⇒ y ∈ G ⇒ x * y ∈ G"
  assumes inverse_in_G [simp, intro]: "x ∈ G ⇒ inverse x ∈ G"
begin

lemma divide_in_G [intro]: "f ∈ G ⇒ g ∈ G ⇒ f / g ∈ G"
  <proof>

lemma power_in_G [intro]: "f ∈ G ⇒ f ^ n ∈ G"
  <proof>

lemma power_int_in_G [intro]: "f ∈ G ⇒ f powi n ∈ G"
  <proof>

lemma prod_list_in_G [intro]: "(∧x. x ∈ set xs ⇒ x ∈ G) ⇒ prod_list
xs ∈ G"
  <proof>

lemma inverse_in_G_iff [simp]: "inverse f ∈ G ↔ f ∈ G"
  <proof>

```

```

definition rel :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  bool" where
  "rel x y  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x > 0  $\wedge$  Im y > 0  $\wedge$  ( $\exists f \in G$ . apply_modgrp f x = y)"

definition orbit :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex set" where
  "orbit x = {y. rel x y}"

lemma Im_nonpos_imp_not_rel: "Im x  $\leq$  0  $\vee$  Im y  $\leq$  0  $\implies$   $\neg$ rel x y"
  <proof>

lemma orbit_empty: "Im x  $\leq$  0  $\implies$  orbit x = {}"
  <proof>

lemma rel_imp_Im_pos [dest]:
  assumes "rel x y"
  shows "Im x > 0" "Im y > 0"
  <proof>

lemma rel_refl [simp]: "rel x x  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x > 0"
  <proof>

lemma rel_sym:
  assumes "rel x y"
  shows "rel y x"
  <proof>

lemma rel_commutes: "rel x y = rel y x"
  <proof>

lemma rel_trans [trans]:
  assumes "rel x y" "rel y z"
  shows "rel x z"
  <proof>

lemma relI1 [intro]: "rel x y  $\implies$  f  $\in$  G  $\implies$  Im x > 0  $\implies$  rel x (apply_modgrp
f y)"
  <proof>

lemma relI2 [intro]: "rel x y  $\implies$  f  $\in$  G  $\implies$  Im x > 0  $\implies$  rel (apply_modgrp
f x) y"
  <proof>

lemma rel_apply_modgrp_left_iff [simp]:
  assumes "f  $\in$  G"
  shows "rel (apply_modgrp f x) y  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x > 0  $\wedge$  rel x y"
  <proof>

lemma rel_apply_modgrp_right_iff [simp]:
  assumes "f  $\in$  G"

```

```

shows "rel y (apply_modgrp f x)  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x > 0  $\wedge$  rel y x"
<proof>

lemma orbit_refl_iff: "x  $\in$  orbit x  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x > 0"
<proof>

lemma orbit_refl: "Im x > 0  $\implies$  x  $\in$  orbit x"
<proof>

lemma orbit_cong: "rel x y  $\implies$  orbit x = orbit y"
<proof>

lemma orbit_empty_iff [simp]: "orbit x = {}  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x  $\leq$  0" "{} = orbit
x  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x  $\leq$  0"
<proof>

lemmas [simp] = orbit_refl_iff

lemma orbit_eq_iff: "orbit x = orbit y  $\longleftrightarrow$  Im x  $\leq$  0  $\wedge$  Im y  $\leq$  0  $\vee$  rel
x y"
<proof>

lemma orbit_apply_modgrp [simp]: "f  $\in$  G  $\implies$  orbit (apply_modgrp f z)
= orbit z"
<proof>

lemma apply_modgrp_in_orbit_iff [simp]: "f  $\in$  G  $\implies$  apply_modgrp f z
 $\in$  orbit y  $\longleftrightarrow$  z  $\in$  orbit y"
<proof>

lemma orbit_imp_Im_pos: "x  $\in$  orbit y  $\implies$  Im x > 0"
<proof>

end

interpretation modular_group: modgrp_subgroup UNIV
<proof>

notation modular_group.rel (infixl " $\sim_{\Gamma}$ " 49)

lemma (in modgrp_subgroup) rel_imp_rel: "rel x y  $\implies$  x  $\sim_{\Gamma}$  y"
<proof>

lemma modular_group_rel_plus_int_iff_right1 [simp]:
  assumes "z  $\in$   $\mathbb{Z}$ "
  shows "x  $\sim_{\Gamma}$  y + z  $\longleftrightarrow$  x  $\sim_{\Gamma}$  y"
<proof>

lemma

```

```

    assumes "z ∈ ℤ"
    shows modular_group_rel_plus_int_iff_right2 [simp]: "x ∼Γ z + y ↔
x ∼Γ y"
      and modular_group_rel_plus_int_iff_left1 [simp]: "z + x ∼Γ y ↔
x ∼Γ y"
      and modular_group_rel_plus_int_iff_left2 [simp]: "x + z ∼Γ y ↔
x ∼Γ y"
    ⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma modular_group_rel_S_iff_right [simp]: "x ∼Γ -(1/y) ↔ x ∼Γ y"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma modular_group_rel_S_iff_left [simp]: "-(1/x) ∼Γ y ↔ x ∼Γ y"
⟨proof⟩

```

### 2.8.1 Subgroups containing shifts

```

definition modgrp_subgroup_period :: "modgrp set ⇒ nat" where
  "modgrp_subgroup_period G = nat (Gcd {n. shift_modgrp n ∈ G})"

```

```

lemma of_nat_modgrp_subgroup_period:
  "of_nat (modgrp_subgroup_period G) = Gcd {n. shift_modgrp n ∈ G}"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma ideal_int_conv_Gcd:
  fixes A :: "int set"
  assumes "0 ∈ A"
  assumes "∧x y. x ∈ A ⇒ y ∈ A ⇒ x + y ∈ A"
  assumes "∧x y. x ∈ A ⇒ x * y ∈ A"
  shows "A = {n. Gcd A dvd n}"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

locale modgrp_subgroup_periodic = modgrp_subgroup +
  assumes periodic': "∃n>0. shift_modgrp n ∈ G"
begin

```

```

lemma modgrp_subgroup_period_pos: "modgrp_subgroup_period G > 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma shift_modgrp_in_G_iff: "shift_modgrp n ∈ G ↔ int (modgrp_subgroup_period
G) dvd n"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma shift_modgrp_in_G_period [intro, simp]:
  "shift_modgrp (int (modgrp_subgroup_period G)) ∈ G"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma shift_modgrp_in_G [intro]:

```

```

    "int (modgrp_subgroup_period G) dvd n  $\implies$  shift_modgrp n  $\in$  G"
    <proof>

end

interpretation modular_group: modgrp_subgroup_periodic UNIV
  rewrites "modgrp_subgroup_period UNIV = Suc 0"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_subgroup_period_UNIV [simp]: "modgrp_subgroup_period UNIV
= Suc 0"
  <proof>

2.8.2 Congruence subgroups

lift_definition modgrps_cong :: "int  $\Rightarrow$  modgrp set" is
  "\q. {(a,b,c,d) :: (int  $\times$  int  $\times$  int  $\times$  int) | a b c d. a * d - b *
c = 1  $\wedge$  q dvd c}"
  <proof>

lemma modgrps_cong_altdef: "modgrps_cong q = {f. q dvd modgrp_c f}"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_in_modgrps_cong_iff:
  assumes "a * d - b * c = 1"
  shows "modgrp a b c d  $\in$  modgrps_cong q  $\longleftrightarrow$  q dvd c"
  <proof>

lemma modgrp_in_modgrps_cong:
  assumes "q dvd c" "a * d - b * c = 1"
  shows "modgrp a b c d  $\in$  modgrps_cong q"
  <proof>

lemma shift_in_modgrps_cong [simp]: "shift_modgrp n  $\in$  modgrps_cong q"
  <proof>

lemma S_in_modgrps_cong_iff [simp]: "S_modgrp  $\in$  modgrps_cong q  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_unit
q"
  <proof>

locale hecke_cong_subgroup =
  fixes q :: int
  assumes q_pos: "q > 0"
begin

definition subgrp ("Γ''") where "subgrp = modgrps_cong q"

lemma shift_in_subgrp [simp]: "shift_modgrp n  $\in$  subgrp"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma S_in_subgrp_iff [simp]: "S_modgrp ∈ subgrp  $\longleftrightarrow$  q = 1"
  <proof>

sublocale modgrp_subgroup  $\Gamma'$ 
  <proof>

end

locale hecke_prime_subgroup =
  fixes p :: int
  assumes p_prime: "prime p"
begin

lemma p_pos: "p > 0"
  <proof>

lemma p_not_1 [simp]: "p  $\neq$  1"
  <proof>

sublocale hecke_cong_subgroup p
  <proof>

notation subgrp (" $\Gamma'$ ")

definition S_shift_modgrp where "S_shift_modgrp n = S_modgrp * shift_modgrp
n"

lemma modgrp_decompose:
  assumes "f  $\notin$   $\Gamma'$ "
  obtains g k where "g ∈  $\Gamma'$ " "k ∈ {0..\Gamma'" "h = 1  $\vee$  ( $\exists$  k ∈ {0..

```

### 3 Complex lattices

```
theory Complex_Lattices
```

```

imports "HOL-Complex_Analysis.Complex_Analysis" Parallelogram_Paths
begin

```

```

lemmas [simp del] = div_mult_self1 div_mult_self2 div_mult_self3 div_mult_self4

```

### 3.1 Basic definitions and useful lemmas

We define a complex lattice with two generators  $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \mathbb{C}$  as the set  $\Lambda(\omega_1, \omega_2) = \omega_1\mathbb{Z} + \omega_2\mathbb{Z}$ . For now, we make no restrictions on the generators, but for most of our results we will require that they be independent (i.e. neither is a multiple of the other, or, in terms of complex numbers, their quotient is not real).

```

locale pre_complex_lattice =
  fixes  $\omega_1 \ \omega_2 :: \text{complex}$ 
begin

```

The following function convergs from lattice coordinates into cartesian coordinates.

```

definition of_omega12_coords :: "real × real ⇒ complex" where
  "of_omega12_coords = ( $\lambda(x,y)$ ). of_real x *  $\omega_1$  + of_real y *  $\omega_2$ "

```

```

sublocale of_omega12_coords: linear of_omega12_coords
  ⟨proof⟩

```

```

sublocale of_omega12_coords: bounded_linear of_omega12_coords
  ⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemmas [continuous_intros] = of_omega12_coords.continuous_on of_omega12_coords.continuous
lemmas [tendsto_intros] = of_omega12_coords.tendsto

```

```

lemmas [simp] = of_omega12_coords.add of_omega12_coords.diff of_omega12_coords.neg
of_omega12_coords.scaleR

```

```

lemma of_omega12_coords_fst [simp]: "of_omega12_coords (a, 0) = of_real a *  $\omega_1$ "
and of_omega12_coords_snd [simp]: "of_omega12_coords (0, a) = of_real a *  $\omega_2$ "
and of_omega12_coords_scaleR': "of_omega12_coords (c *R z) = of_real c * of_omega12_coords z"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

The following is our lattice as a set of lattice points.

```

definition lattice :: "complex set" ("Λ") where
  "lattice = of_omega12_coords ' ( $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$ )"

```

```

definition lattice0 :: "complex set" ("Λ*") where
  "lattice0 = lattice - {0}"

```

```

lemma countable_lattice [intro]: "countable lattice"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma latticeI: "of_ω12_coords (x, y) = z ⇒ x ∈ ℤ ⇒ y ∈ ℤ ⇒
z ∈ Λ"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma latticeE:
  assumes "z ∈ Λ"
  obtains x y where "z = of_ω12_coords (of_int x, of_int y)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma lattice0I [intro]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ z ≠ 0 ⇒ z ∈ Λ*"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma lattice0E [elim]: "∧P. z ∈ Λ* ⇒ (z ∈ Λ ⇒ z ≠ 0 ⇒ P) ⇒
P"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma in_lattice0_iff: "z ∈ Λ* ↔ z ∈ Λ ∧ z ≠ 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

named_theorems lattice_intros

lemma zero_in_lattice [lattice_intros, simp]: "0 ∈ lattice"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma generator_in_lattice [lattice_intros, simp]: "ω1 ∈ lattice" "ω2
∈ lattice"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma uminus_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ -z ∈ Λ"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma uminus_in_lattice_iff: "-z ∈ Λ ↔ z ∈ Λ"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma uminus_in_lattice0_iff: "-z ∈ Λ* ↔ z ∈ Λ*"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma add_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ w ∈ Λ ⇒ z + w ∈
Λ"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma lattice_lattice0: "Λ = insert 0 Λ*"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma mult_of_nat_left_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ of_nat

```

```

n * z ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma mult_of_nat_right_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ z *
of_nat n ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma mult_of_int_left_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ of_int
n * z ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma mult_of_int_right_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ z *
of_int n ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma diff_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "z ∈ Λ ⇒ w ∈ Λ ⇒ z - w
∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma diff_in_lattice_commute: "z - w ∈ Λ ↔ w - z ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma of_ω12_coords_in_lattice [lattice_intros]: "ab ∈ ℤ × ℤ ⇒ of_ω12_coords
ab ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma lattice_plus_right_cancel [simp]: "y ∈ Λ ⇒ x + y ∈ Λ ↔ x
∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma lattice_plus_left_cancel [simp]: "x ∈ Λ ⇒ x + y ∈ Λ ↔ y ∈
Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma lattice_induct [consumes 1, case_names zero gen1 gen2 add uminus]:
  assumes "z ∈ Λ"
  assumes zero: "P 0"
  assumes gens: "P ω1" "P ω2"
  assumes plus: "∧w z. P w ⇒ P z ⇒ P (w + z)"
  assumes uminus: "∧w. P w ⇒ P (-w)"
  shows "P z"
⟨proof⟩

```

The following equivalence relation equates two points if they differ by a lattice point.

```

definition rel :: "complex ⇒ complex ⇒ bool" where
  "rel x y ↔ (x - y) ∈ Λ"

```

```

lemma rel_refl [simp, intro]: "rel x x"

```

$\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma relE:**  
 assumes "rel x y"  
 obtains z where "z  $\in \Lambda$ " "y = x + z"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_symI:** "rel x y  $\implies$  rel y x"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_sym:** "rel x y  $\longleftrightarrow$  rel y x"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_0\_right\_iff:** "rel x 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  x  $\in \Lambda$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_0\_left\_iff:** "rel 0 x  $\longleftrightarrow$  x  $\in \Lambda$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_trans [trans]:** "rel x y  $\implies$  rel y z  $\implies$  rel x z"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_minus [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel (-a) (-b)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_minus\_iff:** "rel (-a) (-b)  $\longleftrightarrow$  rel a b"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_add [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel c d  $\implies$  rel (a + c) (b + d)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_diff [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel c d  $\implies$  rel (a - c) (b - d)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_mult\_of\_nat\_left [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel (of\_nat n \* a) (of\_nat n \* b)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_mult\_of\_nat\_right [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel (a \* of\_nat n) (b \* of\_nat n)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_mult\_of\_int\_left [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel (of\_int n \* a) (of\_int n \* b)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma rel\_mult\_of\_int\_right [lattice\_intros]:** "rel a b  $\implies$  rel (a \* of\_int n) (b \* of\_int n)"  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

```

of_int n) (b * of_int n)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma rel_sum [lattice_intros]:
  "( $\bigwedge i. i \in A \implies \text{rel } (f i) (g i)$ )  $\implies \text{rel } (\sum_{i \in A} f i) (\sum_{i \in A} g i)$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma rel_sum_list [lattice_intros]:
  "list_all2 rel xs ys  $\implies \text{rel } (\text{sum\_list } xs) (\text{sum\_list } ys)$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma rel_lattice_trans_left [trans]: "x  $\in \Lambda \implies \text{rel } x y \implies y \in \Lambda$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma rel_lattice_trans_right [trans]: "rel x y  $\implies y \in \Lambda \implies x \in \Lambda$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

end

Exchanging the two generators clearly does not change the underlying lattice.

locale pre_complex_lattice_swap = pre_complex_lattice
begin

sublocale swap: pre_complex_lattice  $\omega_2 \ \omega_1$  ⟨proof⟩

lemma swap_of_ $\omega_{12}$ _coords [simp]: "swap.of_ $\omega_{12}$ _coords = of_ $\omega_{12}$ _coords  $\circ$  prod.swap"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma swap_lattice [simp]: "swap.lattice = lattice"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma swap_lattice0 [simp]: "swap.lattice0 = lattice0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma swap_rel [simp]: "swap.rel = rel"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

A pair  $(\omega_1, \omega_2)$  of complex numbers with  $\omega_2 / \omega_1 \notin \mathbb{R}$  is called a fundamental pair. Two such pairs are called equivalent if

definition fundpair :: "complex  $\times$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  bool" where
  "fundpair =  $(\lambda(a, b). b / a \notin \mathbb{R})$ "

lemma fundpair_swap: "fundpair ab  $\longleftrightarrow$  fundpair (prod.swap ab)"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

**lemma** *fundpair\_cnj\_iff* [simp]: "fundpair (cnj a, cnj b) = fundpair (a, b)"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *fundpair\_altdef*: "fundpair = (λ(a,b). a / b ∉ ℝ)"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma**

assumes "fundpair (a, b)"

shows fundpair\_imp\_nonzero [dest]: "a ≠ 0" "b ≠ 0"

and fundpair\_imp\_neq: "a ≠ b" "b ≠ a"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *fundpair\_imp\_independent*:

assumes "fundpair (ω1, ω2)"

shows "independent {ω1, ω2}"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *fundpair\_imp\_basis*:

assumes "fundpair (ω1, ω2)"

shows "span {ω1, ω2} = UNIV"

⟨proof⟩

We now introduce the assumption that the generators be independent. This makes  $\{\omega_1, \omega_2\}$  a basis of  $\mathbb{C}$  (in the sense of an  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector space), and we define a few functions to help us convert between these two views.

**locale** *complex\_lattice* = *pre\_complex\_lattice* +

assumes *fundpair*: "fundpair (ω1, ω2)"

**begin**

**lemma** *ω1\_neq\_ω2* [simp]: "ω1 ≠ ω2" and *ω2\_neq\_ω1* [simp]: "ω2 ≠ ω1"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ω1\_nonzero* [simp]: "ω1 ≠ 0" and *ω2\_nonzero* [simp]: "ω2 ≠ 0"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *lattice0\_nonempty* [simp]: "lattice0 ≠ {}"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ω12\_independent'*: "independent {ω1, ω2}"

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *span\_ω12*: "span {ω1, ω2} = UNIV"

⟨proof⟩

The following converts complex numbers into lattice coordinates, i.e. as a linear combination of the two generators.

**definition** *ω1\_coord* :: "complex ⇒ real" **where**

"ω1\_coord z = representation {ω1, ω2} z ω1"

```

definition  $\omega_2\_coord$  :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  real" where
  " $\omega_2\_coord$  z = representation { $\omega_1$ ,  $\omega_2$ } z  $\omega_2$ "

definition  $\omega_{12}\_coords$  :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  real  $\times$  real" where
  " $\omega_{12}\_coords$  z = ( $\omega_1\_coord$  z,  $\omega_2\_coord$  z)"

sublocale  $\omega_1\_coord$ : bounded_linear  $\omega_1\_coord$ 
  <proof>

sublocale  $\omega_2\_coord$ : bounded_linear  $\omega_2\_coord$ 
  <proof>

sublocale  $\omega_{12}\_coords$ : linear  $\omega_{12}\_coords$ 
  <proof>

sublocale  $\omega_{12}\_coords$ : bounded_linear  $\omega_{12}\_coords$ 
  <proof>

lemmas [continuous_intros] =
   $\omega_1\_coord$ .continuous_on  $\omega_1\_coord$ .continuous
   $\omega_2\_coord$ .continuous_on  $\omega_2\_coord$ .continuous
   $\omega_{12}\_coords$ .continuous_on  $\omega_{12}\_coords$ .continuous

lemmas [tendsto_intros] =  $\omega_1\_coord$ .tendsto  $\omega_2\_coord$ .tendsto  $\omega_{12}\_coords$ .tendsto

lemma  $\omega_1\_coord\_w1$  [simp]: " $\omega_1\_coord$   $\omega_1$  = 1"
  and  $\omega_1\_coord\_w2$  [simp]: " $\omega_1\_coord$   $\omega_2$  = 0"
  and  $\omega_2\_coord\_w1$  [simp]: " $\omega_2\_coord$   $\omega_1$  = 0"
  and  $\omega_2\_coord\_w2$  [simp]: " $\omega_2\_coord$   $\omega_2$  = 1"
  <proof>

lemma  $\omega_{12}\_coords\_w1$  [simp]: " $\omega_{12}\_coords$   $\omega_1$  = (1, 0)"
  and  $\omega_{12}\_coords\_w2$  [simp]: " $\omega_{12}\_coords$   $\omega_2$  = (0, 1)"
  <proof>

lemma  $\omega_{12}\_coords\_of\_w_{12}\_coords$  [simp]: " $\omega_{12}\_coords$  (of_ $\omega_{12}\_coords$  z)
= z"
  <proof>

lemma  $\omega_1\_coord\_of\_w_{12}\_coords$  [simp]: " $\omega_1\_coord$  (of_ $\omega_{12}\_coords$  z) =
fst z"
  and  $\omega_2\_coord\_of\_w_{12}\_coords$  [simp]: " $\omega_2\_coord$  (of_ $\omega_{12}\_coords$  z) = snd
z"
  <proof>

lemma of_ $\omega_{12}\_coords\_w_{12}\_coords$  [simp]: "of_ $\omega_{12}\_coords$  ( $\omega_{12}\_coords$  z)
= z"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma  $\omega_{12\_coords\_eqI}$ :
  assumes "of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$  a = b"
  shows "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  b = a"
  <proof>

lemmas [simp] =  $\omega_{1\_coord.scaleR}$   $\omega_{2\_coord.scaleR}$   $\omega_{12\_coords.scaleR}$ 

lemma  $\omega_{12\_coords\_times\_w1}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (of_real a *  $\omega_1$ ) = (a, 0)"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_times\_w2}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (of_real a *  $\omega_2$ ) = (0, a)"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_times\_w1'}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  ( $\omega_1$  * of_real a) = (a, 0)"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_times\_w2'}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  ( $\omega_2$  * of_real a) = (0, a)"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_mult\_of\_real}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (of_real c * z) = c *R  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_mult\_of\_int}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (of_int i * z) = of_int i *R  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_mult\_of\_nat}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (of_nat n * z) = of_nat n *R  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_divide\_of\_real}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (z / of_real c) =  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z /R c"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_mult\_numeral}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (numeral num * z) = numeral num *R  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z"
  and  $\omega_{12\_coords\_divide\_numeral}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  (z / numeral num) =  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z /R numeral num"
  <proof>

lemma of_ $\omega_{12\_coords\_eq\_iff}$ : "of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z1 = of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z2  $\longleftrightarrow$  z1 = z2"
  <proof>

lemma  $\omega_{12\_coords\_eq\_iff}$ : "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z1 =  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z2  $\longleftrightarrow$  z1 = z2"
  <proof>

lemma of_ $\omega_{12\_coords\_eq\_0\_iff}$  [simp]: "of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$  z = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  z = (0,0)"
  <proof>

lemma  $\omega_{12\_coords\_eq\_0\_0\_iff}$  [simp]: "  $\omega_{12\_coords}$  x = (0, 0)  $\longleftrightarrow$  x = 0"
  <proof>

lemma bij_of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$ : "bij of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$ "
  <proof>

lemma bij_betw_lattice: "bij_betw of_ $\omega_{12\_coords}$  ( $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$ ) lattice"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma bij_betw_lattice0: "bij_betw of_ω12_coords ( $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} - \{(0,0)\}$ )
lattice0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma bij_betw_lattice': "bij_betw (of_ω12_coords ∘ map_prod of_int
of_int) UNIV lattice"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma bij_betw_lattice0': "bij_betw (of_ω12_coords ∘ map_prod of_int
of_int) ( $-\{(0,0)\}$ ) lattice0"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma infinite_lattice: " $\neg$ finite lattice"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma ω12_coords_image_eq: "ω12_coords ` X = of_ω12_coords -` X"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_ω12_coords_image_eq: "of_ω12_coords ` X = ω12_coords -` X"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_ω12_coords_linepath:
  "of_ω12_coords (linepath a b x) = linepath (of_ω12_coords a) (of_ω12_coords
b) x"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_ω12_coords_linepath':
  "of_ω12_coords ∘ (linepath a b) =
  linepath (of_ω12_coords a) (of_ω12_coords b)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma ω12_coords_linepath:
  "ω12_coords (linepath a b x) = linepath (ω12_coords a) (ω12_coords
b) x"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_ω12_coords_in_lattice_iff:
  "of_ω12_coords z ∈ Λ  $\longleftrightarrow$  fst z ∈  $\mathbb{Z}$  ∧ snd z ∈  $\mathbb{Z}$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma of_ω12_coords_in_lattice [simp, intro]:
  "fst z ∈  $\mathbb{Z}$   $\implies$  snd z ∈  $\mathbb{Z}$   $\implies$  of_ω12_coords z ∈ Λ"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma in_lattice_conv_ω12_coords: "z ∈ Λ  $\longleftrightarrow$  ω12_coords z ∈  $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma ω12_coords_in_Z_times_Z: "z ∈ Λ  $\implies$  ω12_coords z ∈  $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$ "

```

```

    <proof>

lemma half_periods_notin_lattice [simp]:
  " $\omega_1 / 2 \notin \Lambda$ " " $\omega_2 / 2 \notin \Lambda$ " " $(\omega_1 + \omega_2) / 2 \notin \Lambda$ "
  <proof>

end

locale complex_lattice_swap = complex_lattice
begin

sublocale pre_complex_lattice_swap  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  <proof>

sublocale swap: complex_lattice  $\omega_2$   $\omega_1$ 
  <proof>

lemma swap_omega12_coords [simp]: "swap.omega12_coords = prod.swap  $\circ$  omega12_coords"
  <proof>

lemma swap_omega1_coord [simp]: "swap.omega1_coord = omega2_coord"
  and swap_omega2_coord [simp]: "swap.omega2_coord = omega1_coord"
  <proof>

end

```

### 3.2 Period parallelograms

```

context pre_complex_lattice
begin

```

The period parallelogram at a vertex  $z$  is the parallelogram with the vertices  $z$ ,  $z + \omega_1$ ,  $z + \omega_2$ , and  $z + \omega_1 + \omega_2$ . For convenience, we define the parallelogram to be contain only two of its four sides, so that one can obtain an exact covering of the complex plane with period parallelograms.

We will occasionally need the full parallelogram with all four sides, or the interior of the parallelogram without its four sides, but these are easily obtained from this using the *closure* and *interior* operators, while the border itself (which is of interest for integration) is obtained with the *frontier* operator.

```

definition period_parallelogram :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex set" where
  "period_parallelogram z = (+) z ' of_omega12_coords ' ( $\{0..<1\} \times \{0..<1\}$ )"

```

The following is a path along the border of a period parallelogram, starting at the vertex  $z$  and going in direction  $\omega_1$ .

```

definition period_parallelogram_path :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  real  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where
  "period_parallelogram_path z  $\equiv$  parallelogram_path z  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ "

```

```

lemma bounded_period_parallelogram [intro]: "bounded (period_parallelogram
z)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma convex_period_parallelogram [intro]:
  "convex (period_parallelogram z)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma closure_period_parallelogram:
  "closure (period_parallelogram z) = (+) z ' of_ω12_coords ' (cbox (0,0)
(1,1))"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma compact_closure_period_parallelogram [intro]: "compact (closure
(period_parallelogram z))"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma vertex_in_period_parallelogram [simp, intro]: "z ∈ period_parallelogram
z"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma nonempty_period_parallelogram: "period_parallelogram z ≠ {}"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

lemma (in pre_complex_lattice_swap)
  swap_period_parallelogram [simp]: "swap.period_parallelogram = period_parallelogram"
  ⟨proof⟩

context complex_lattice
begin

lemma simple_path_parallelogram: "simple_path (parallelogram_path z ω1
ω2)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma (in -) image_plus_conv_vimage_plus:
  fixes c :: "'a :: group_add"
  shows "(+) c ' A = (+) (-c) -' A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma period_parallelogram_altdef:
  "period_parallelogram z = {w. ω12_coords (w - z) ∈ {0..<1} × {0..<1}}"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma interior_period_parallelogram:

```

```

    "interior (period_parallelogram z) = (+) z ' of_ω12_coords ' box (0,0)
(1,1)"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma path_image_parallelogram_path':
  "path_image (parallelogram_path z ω1 ω2) =
    (+) z ' of_ω12_coords ' (cbox (0,0) (1,1) - box (0,0) (1,1))"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma fund_period_parallelogram_in_lattice_iff:
  assumes "z ∈ period_parallelogram 0"
  shows "z ∈ Λ ↔ z = 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma path_image_parallelogram_path:
  "path_image (parallelogram_path z ω1 ω2) = frontier (period_parallelogram
z)"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma path_image_parallelogram_subset_closure:
  "path_image (parallelogram_path z ω1 ω2) ⊆ closure (period_parallelogram
z)"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma path_image_parallelogram_disjoint_interior:
  "path_image (parallelogram_path z ω1 ω2) ∩ interior (period_parallelogram
z) = {}"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma winding_number_parallelogram_outside:
  assumes "w ∉ closure (period_parallelogram z)"
  shows "winding_number (parallelogram_path z ω1 ω2) w = 0"
⟨proof⟩

```

The path we take around the period parallelogram is clearly a simple path, and its orientation depends on the angle between our generators.

```

lemma winding_number_parallelogram_inside:
  assumes "w ∈ interior (period_parallelogram z)"
  shows "winding_number (parallelogram_path z ω1 ω2) w = sgn (Im (ω2
/ ω1))"
⟨proof⟩

```

end

### 3.3 Canonical representatives and the fundamental parallelogram

```

context complex_lattice
begin

```

The following function maps any complex number  $z$  to its canonical representative  $z'$  in the fundamental period parallelogram.

**definition** `to_fund_parallelogram` :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where  
`"to_fund_parallelogram z =`  
`(case  $\omega_{12}$ _coords z of (a, b)  $\Rightarrow$  of_ $\omega_{12}$ _coords (frac a, frac b))"`

**lemma** `to_fund_parallelogram_in_parallelogram` [intro]:  
`"to_fund_parallelogram z  $\in$  period_parallelogram 0"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma**  `$\omega_1$ _coord_to_fund_parallelogram` [simp]: " `$\omega_1$ _coord (to_fund_parallelogram z) = frac ( $\omega_1$ _coord z)`"  
**and**  `$\omega_2$ _coord_to_fund_parallelogram` [simp]: " `$\omega_2$ _coord (to_fund_parallelogram z) = frac ( $\omega_2$ _coord z)`"  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `to_fund_parallelogramE`:  
**obtains** `m n` where "`to_fund_parallelogram z = z + of_int m *  $\omega_1$  + of_int n *  $\omega_2$` "  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `rel_to_fund_parallelogram_left`: "`rel (to_fund_parallelogram z) z`"  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `rel_to_fund_parallelogram_right`: "`rel z (to_fund_parallelogram z)`"  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `rel_to_fund_parallelogram_left_iff` [simp]: "`rel (to_fund_parallelogram z) w  $\longleftrightarrow$  rel z w`"  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `rel_to_fund_parallelogram_right_iff` [simp]: "`rel z (to_fund_parallelogram w)  $\longleftrightarrow$  rel z w`"  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `to_fund_parallelogram_in_lattice_iff` [simp]:  
`"to_fund_parallelogram z  $\in$  lattice  $\longleftrightarrow$  z  $\in$  lattice"`  
`<proof>`

**lemma** `to_fund_parallelogram_in_lattice` [lattice\_intros]:  
`"z  $\in$  lattice  $\implies$  to_fund_parallelogram z  $\in$  lattice"`  
`<proof>`

`to_fund_parallelogram` is a bijective map from any period parallelogram to the standard period parallelogram:

**lemma** `bij_betw_to_fund_parallelogram`:

"bij\_betw to\_fund\_parallelogram (period\_parallelogram orig) (period\_parallelogram 0)"  
 ⟨proof⟩

There exists a bijection between any two period parallelograms that always maps points to equivalent points.

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_period\_parallelograms*:  
 obtains *f* where  
 "bij\_betw *f* (period\_parallelogram orig) (period\_parallelogram orig)"  
 "∧z. rel (*f* z) z"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_0 [simp]*: "to\_fund\_parallelogram 0 = 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_lattice [simp]*: " $z \in \Lambda \implies \text{to\_fund\_parallelogram } z = 0$ "  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_eq\_iff [simp]*:  
 "to\_fund\_parallelogram *u* = to\_fund\_parallelogram *v*  $\longleftrightarrow$  rel *u* *v*"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_eq\_0\_iff [simp]*: "to\_fund\_parallelogram *u* = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  *u*  $\in$   $\Lambda$ "  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_of\_fund\_parallelogram*:  
 " $z \in \text{period\_parallelogram } 0 \implies \text{to\_fund\_parallelogram } z = z$ "  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_idemp [simp]*:  
 "to\_fund\_parallelogram (to\_fund\_parallelogram *z*) = to\_fund\_parallelogram *z*"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_unique*:  
 assumes "rel *z* *z*'" " $z' \in \text{period\_parallelogram } 0$ "  
 shows "to\_fund\_parallelogram *z* = *z*'"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_unique'*:  
 assumes "rel *z* *z*'" " $z \in \text{period\_parallelogram } 0$ " " $z' \in \text{period\_parallelogram } 0$ "  
 shows " $z = z'$ "  
 ⟨proof⟩

The following is the “left half” of the fundamental parallelogram. The bottom border is contained, the top border is not. Of the frontier of this

parallelogram only the upper half is

**definition** (in `pre_complex_lattice`) `half_fund_parallelogram` where

```
"half_fund_parallelogram =
  of_ω12_coords ' {(x,y). x ∈ {0..1/2} ∧ y ∈ {0..<1} ∧ (x ∈ {0, 1/2}
→ y ≤ 1/2)}"
```

**lemma** `half_fund_parallelogram_altdef`:

```
"half_fund_parallelogram = ω12_coords -' {(x,y). x ∈ {0..1/2} ∧ y ∈
{0..<1} ∧ (x ∈ {0, 1/2} → y ≤ 1/2)}"
⟨proof⟩
```

**lemma** `zero_in_half_fund_parallelogram` [`simp`, `intro`]: "`0 ∈ half_fund_parallelogram`"

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** `half_fund_parallelogram_in_lattice_iff`:

```
assumes "z ∈ half_fund_parallelogram"
shows "z ∈ Λ ↔ z = 0"
⟨proof⟩
```

**definition** `to_half_fund_parallelogram` :: "`complex ⇒ complex`" where

```
"to_half_fund_parallelogram z =
  (let (x,y) = map_prod frac frac (ω12_coords z);
    (x',y') = (if x > 1/2 ∨ (x ∈ {0, 1/2} ∧ y > 1 / 2) then (if
x = 0 then 0 else 1 - x, if y = 0 then 0 else 1 - y) else (x, y))
  in of_ω12_coords (x',y'))"
```

**lemma** `in_Ints_conv_floor`: "`x ∈ ℤ ↔ x = of_int (floor x)`"

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** (in `complex_lattice`) `rel_to_half_fund_parallelogram`:

```
"rel z (to_half_fund_parallelogram z) ∨ rel z (-to_half_fund_parallelogram
z)"
⟨proof⟩
```

**lemma** (in `complex_lattice`) `to_half_fund_parallelogram_in_half_fund_parallelogram` [`intro`]:

```
"to_half_fund_parallelogram z ∈ half_fund_parallelogram"
⟨proof⟩
```

**lemma** (in `complex_lattice`) `half_fund_parallelogram_subset_period_parallelogram`:

```
"half_fund_parallelogram ⊆ period_parallelogram 0"
⟨proof⟩
```

**lemma** `to_half_fund_parallelogram_in_lattice_iff` [`simp`]: "`to_half_fund_parallelogram z ∈ Λ ↔ z ∈ Λ`"

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** `rel_in_half_fund_parallelogram_imp_eq`:

```
assumes "rel z w ∨ rel z (-w)" "z ∈ half_fund_parallelogram" "w ∈
```

```

half_fund_parallelogram"
  shows "z = w"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma to_half_fund_parallelogram_of_half_fund_parallelogram:
  assumes "z ∈ half_fund_parallelogram"
  shows "to_half_fund_parallelogram z = z"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma to_half_fund_parallelogram_idemp [simp]:
  "to_half_fund_parallelogram (to_half_fund_parallelogram z) = to_half_fund_parallelogram
z"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma to_half_fund_parallelogram_unique:
  assumes "rel z z' ∨ rel z (-z'" "z' ∈ half_fund_parallelogram"
  shows "to_half_fund_parallelogram z = z'"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma to_half_fund_parallelogram_eq_iff:
  "to_half_fund_parallelogram z = to_half_fund_parallelogram w ⟷ rel
z w ∨ rel z (-w)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma in_half_fund_parallelogram_imp_half_lattice:
  assumes "z ∈ half_fund_parallelogram" "to_fund_parallelogram (-z) ∈
half_fund_parallelogram"
  shows "2 * z ∈ Λ"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

```

### 3.4 Equivalence of fundamental pairs

Two fundamental pairs are called *equivalent* if they generate the same complex lattice.

```

definition equiv_fundpair :: "complex × complex ⇒ complex × complex ⇒
bool" where
  "equiv_fundpair = (λ(ω1, ω2) (ω1', ω2')).
  pre_complex_lattice.lattice ω1 ω2 = pre_complex_lattice.lattice
ω1' ω2'"

```

```

lemma equiv_fundpair_iff_aux:
  fixes p :: int
  assumes "p * c + q * a = 0" "p * d + q * b = 1"
  "r * c + s * a = 1" "r * d + s * b = 0"
  shows "|a * d - b * c| = 1"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

The following fact is Theorem 1.2 in Apostol's book: two fundamental pairs are equivalent iff there exists a unimodular transformation that maps one to the other.

```

theorem equiv_fundpair_iff:
  fixes  $\omega_1 \omega_2 \omega_1' \omega_2' :: \text{complex}$ 
  assumes "fundpair ( $\omega_1, \omega_2$ )" "fundpair ( $\omega_1', \omega_2'$ )"
  shows "equiv_fundpair ( $\omega_1, \omega_2$ ) ( $\omega_1', \omega_2'$ )  $\longleftrightarrow$ 
        ( $\exists a b c d. |a*d - b*c| = 1 \wedge$ 
           $\omega_2' = \text{of\_int } a * \omega_2 + \text{of\_int } b * \omega_1 \wedge \omega_1' = \text{of\_int } c * \omega_2 + \text{of\_int } d * \omega_1$ )"
    (is "?lhs = ?rhs")
  <proof>

```

We will now look at the triangle spanned by the origin and the generators. We will prove that the only points that lie in or on this triangle are its three vertices.

Moreover, we shall prove that for any lattice  $\Lambda$ , if we have two points  $\omega_1', \omega_2' \in \Lambda$  then these two points generate  $\Lambda$  if and only if the triangle spanned by  $0, \omega_1'$ , and  $\omega_2'$  contains no other lattice points except  $0, \omega_1'$ , and  $\omega_2'$ .

```

context complex_lattice
begin

```

```

lemma in_triangle_iff:
  fixes  $x$ 
  defines " $a \equiv \omega_1\_coord\ x$ " and " $b \equiv \omega_2\_coord\ x$ "
  shows " $x \in \text{convex\_hull } \{0, \omega_1, \omega_2\} \longleftrightarrow a \geq 0 \wedge b \geq 0 \wedge a + b \leq 1$ "
  <proof>

```

The only lattice points inside the fundamental triangle are the generators and the origin.

```

lemma lattice_Int_triangle: "convex_hull {0,  $\omega_1, \omega_2$ }  $\cap \Lambda = \{0, \omega_1, \omega_2\}$ "
  <proof>

```

The following fact is Theorem 1.1 in Apostol's book: given a fixed lattice  $\Lambda$ , a pair of non-collinear period vectors  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  is fundamental (i.e. generates  $\Lambda$ ) iff the triangle spanned by  $0, \omega_1, \omega_2$  contains no lattice points other than its three vertices.

```

lemma equiv_fundpair_iff_triangle:
  assumes "fundpair ( $\omega_1', \omega_2'$ )" " $\omega_1' \in \Lambda$ " " $\omega_2' \in \Lambda$ "
  shows "equiv_fundpair ( $\omega_1, \omega_2$ ) ( $\omega_1', \omega_2'$ )  $\longleftrightarrow \text{convex\_hull } \{0, \omega_1', \omega_2'\} \cap \Lambda = \{0, \omega_1', \omega_2'\}$ "
  <proof>

```

```

end

```

### 3.5 Additional useful facts

**context** *complex\_lattice*  
**begin**

The following partitions the lattice into countably many “layers”, starting from the origin, which is the 0-th layer. The  $k$ -th layer consists of precisely those points in the lattice whose lattice coordinates  $(m, n)$  satisfy  $\max(|m|, |n|) = k$ .

**definition** *lattice\_layer* :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex set" where  
 "lattice\_layer k =  
   of\_ω12\_coords ' map\_prod of\_int of\_int '  
   ({int k, -int k}  $\times$  {-int k..int k}  $\cup$  {-int k..int k}  $\times$  {-int k,  
 int k})"

**lemma** *in\_lattice\_layer\_iff*:  
 "z  $\in$  lattice\_layer k  $\longleftrightarrow$   
   ω12\_coords z  $\in$   $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} \cap$  ({int k, -int k}  $\times$  {-int k..int k}  $\cup$  {-int  
 k..int k}  $\times$  {-int k, int k})"  
 (is "?lhs = ?rhs")  
 <proof>

**lemma** *of\_ω12\_coords\_of\_int\_in\_lattice\_layer*:  
 "of\_ω12\_coords (of\_int a, of\_int b)  $\in$  lattice\_layer (nat (max |a| |b|))"  
 <proof>

**lemma** *lattice\_layer\_covers*: " $\Lambda = (\bigcup k. \text{lattice\_layer } k)$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma** *finite\_lattice\_layer*: "finite (lattice\_layer k)"  
 <proof>

**lemma** *lattice\_layer\_0*: "lattice\_layer 0 = {0}"  
 <proof>

**lemma** *zero\_in\_lattice\_layer\_iff [simp]*: " $0 \in \text{lattice\_layer } k \longleftrightarrow k = 0$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma** *lattice\_layer\_disjoint*:  
 assumes "m  $\neq$  n"  
 shows "lattice\_layer m  $\cap$  lattice\_layer n = {}"  
 <proof>

**lemma** *lattice0\_conv\_layers*: " $\Lambda^* = (\bigcup i \in \{0 < ..\}. \text{lattice\_layer } i)$ " (is  
 "?lhs = ?rhs")  
 <proof>

```

lemma card_lattice_layer:
  assumes "k > 0"
  shows "card (lattice_layer k) = 8 * k"
  <proof>

lemma lattice_layer_nonempty: "lattice_layer k ≠ {}"
  <proof>

definition lattice_layer_path :: "complex set" where
  "lattice_layer_path = of_ω12_coords ' ({1, -1} × {-1..1} ∪ {-1..1}
  × {-1, 1})'"

lemma in_lattice_layer_path_iff:
  "z ∈ lattice_layer_path ↔ ω12_coords z ∈ ({1, -1} × {-1..1} ∪ {-1..1}
  × {-1, 1})"
  <proof>

lemma lattice_layer_path_nonempty: "lattice_layer_path ≠ {}"
  <proof>

lemma compact_lattice_layer_path [intro]: "compact lattice_layer_path"
  <proof>

lemma lattice_layer_subset: "lattice_layer k ⊆ (*) (of_nat k) ' lattice_layer_path"
  <proof>

The shortest and longest distance of any point on the first layer from the
origin, respectively.

definition Inf_para :: real where — r in the proof of Lemma 1
  "Inf_para ≡ Inf (norm ' lattice_layer_path)"

lemma Inf_para_pos: "Inf_para > 0"
  <proof>

lemma Inf_para_nonzero [simp]: "Inf_para ≠ 0"
  <proof>

lemma Inf_para_le:
  assumes "z ∈ lattice_layer_path"
  shows "Inf_para ≤ norm z"
  <proof>

lemma lattice_layer_le_norm:
  assumes "ω ∈ lattice_layer k"
  shows "k * Inf_para ≤ norm ω"
  <proof>

corollary Inf_para_le_norm:
  assumes "ω ∈ Λ*"

```

shows  $\text{Inf\_para} \leq \text{norm } \omega$   
 ⟨proof⟩

One easy corollary is now that our lattice is discrete in the sense that there is a positive real number that bounds the distance between any two points from below.

lemma *Inf\_para\_le\_dist*:  
 assumes  $x \in \Lambda$   $y \in \Lambda$   $x \neq y$   
 shows  $\text{dist } x \ y \geq \text{Inf\_para}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

definition *Sup\_para* :: real where —  $R$  in the proof of Lemma 1  
 $\text{Sup\_para} \equiv \text{Sup } (\text{norm } ` \text{lattice\_layer\_path})$

lemma *Sup\_para\_ge*:  
 assumes  $z \in \text{lattice\_layer\_path}$   
 shows  $\text{Sup\_para} \geq \text{norm } z$   
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *Sup\_para\_pos*:  $\text{Sup\_para} > 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *Sup\_para\_nonzero [simp]*:  $\text{Sup\_para} \neq 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *lattice\_layer\_ge\_norm*:  
 assumes  $\omega \in \text{lattice\_layer } k$   
 shows  $\text{norm } \omega \leq k * \text{Sup\_para}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

We can now easily show that our lattice is a sparse set (i.e. it has no limit points). This also implies that it is closed.

lemma *not\_islimpt\_lattice*:  $\neg z \text{ islimpt } \Lambda$   
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *closed\_lattice*: "closed lattice"  
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *lattice\_sparse*:  $\Lambda \text{ sparse\_in } \text{UNIV}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

Any non-empty set of lattice points has one lattice point that is closer to the origin than all others.

lemma *shortest\_lattice\_vector\_exists*:  
 assumes  $X \subseteq \Lambda$   $X \neq \{\}$   
 obtains  $x$  where  $x \in X$   $\wedge y. y \in X \implies \text{norm } x \leq \text{norm } y$   
 ⟨proof⟩

If  $x$  is a non-zero lattice point then there exists another lattice point that is not collinear with  $x$ , i.e. that does not lie on the line through 0 and  $x$ .

**lemma** *noncollinear\_lattice\_point\_exists*:

assumes " $x \in \Lambda^*$ "

obtains  $y$  where " $y \in \Lambda^*$ " " $y / x \notin \mathbb{R}$ "

*<proof>*

We can always easily find a period parallelogram whose border does not touch any given set of points we want to avoid, as long as that set is sparse.

**lemma** *shifted\_period\_parallelogram\_avoid*:

assumes "*countable avoid*"

obtains *orig* where "*path\_image (parallelogram\_path orig  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ )  $\cap$  avoid = {}*"

*<proof>*

We can also prove a rule that allows us to prove a property about period parallelograms while assuming w.l.o.g. that the border of the parallelogram does not touch an arbitrary sparse set of points we want to avoid and the property we want to prove is invariant under shifting the parallelogram by an arbitrary amount.

This will be useful later for the use case of showing that any period parallelograms contain the same number of zeros as poles, which is proven by integrating along the border of a period parallelogram that is assume w.l.o.g. not to have any zeros or poles on its border.

**lemma** *shifted\_period\_parallelogram\_avoid\_wlog* [*consumes 1, case\_names shift avoid*]:

assumes " $\bigwedge z. \neg z \text{ islimpt } \textit{avoid}$ "

assumes " $\bigwedge \textit{orig} d. \textit{finite} (\textit{closure} (\textit{period\_parallelogram } \textit{orig}) \cap \textit{avoid})$ "

$\implies$

*finite (closure (period\_parallelogram (orig + d))*

$\cap \textit{avoid}) \implies$

*P orig  $\implies$  P (orig + d)*"

assumes " $\bigwedge \textit{orig}. \textit{finite} (\textit{closure} (\textit{period\_parallelogram } \textit{orig}) \cap \textit{avoid})$ "

$\implies$

*path\_image (parallelogram\_path orig  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ )  $\cap$  avoid*

$= \{\}$   $\implies$

*P orig*"

shows "*P orig*"

*<proof>*

**end**

The standard lattice is one that has been rotated and scaled such that the first generator is 1 and the second generator  $\tau$  lies in the upper half plane.

**locale** *std\_complex\_lattice* =

fixes  $\tau :: \textit{complex}$  (**structure**)

assumes *Im\_ $\tau$ \_pos*: "*Im  $\tau > 0$* "

```

begin

sublocale complex_lattice 1  $\tau$ 
  <proof>

lemma winding_number_parallelogram_inside':
  assumes "w  $\in$  interior (period_parallelogram z)"
  shows "winding_number (parallelogram_path z 1  $\tau$ ) w = 1"
  <proof>

end

```

### 3.6 Doubly-periodic functions

The following locale can be useful to prove that certain things respect the equivalence relation defined by the lattice: it shows that a doubly periodic function gives the same value for all equivalent points. Note that this is useful even for functions  $f$  that are only doubly quasi-periodic, since one might then still be able to prove that the function  $\lambda z. f z = 0$  or  $zorder f$  or  $is\_pole f$  are doubly periodic, so the zeros and poles of  $f$  are distributed according to the lattice symmetry.

```

locale pre_complex_lattice_periodic = pre_complex_lattice +
  fixes f :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  'a"
  assumes f_periodic: "f (z +  $\omega$ 1) = f z" "f (z +  $\omega$ 2) = f z"
begin

lemma lattice_cong:
  assumes "rel x y"
  shows "f x = f y"
  <proof>

end

locale complex_lattice_periodic =
  complex_lattice  $\omega$ 1  $\omega$ 2 + pre_complex_lattice_periodic  $\omega$ 1  $\omega$ 2 f
  for  $\omega$ 1  $\omega$ 2 :: complex and f :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  'a"
begin

lemma eval_to_fund_parallelogram: "f (to_fund_parallelogram z) = f z"
  <proof>

end

locale complex_lattice_periodic_compose =
  complex_lattice_periodic  $\omega$ 1  $\omega$ 2 f for  $\omega$ 1  $\omega$ 2 :: complex and f :: "complex
 $\Rightarrow$  'a" +
  fixes h :: "'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b"
begin

```

```

sublocale compose: complex_lattice_periodic  $\omega_1 \omega_2$  " $\lambda z. h (f z)$ "
  <proof>

```

```

end

```

```

end

```

## 4 Fundamental regions of the modular group

```

theory Modular_Fundamental_Region
  imports Modular_Group Complex_Lattices "HOL-Library.Real_Mod"
begin

```

### 4.1 Definition

A fundamental region of a subgroup of the modular group is an open subset of the upper half of the complex plane that contains at most one representative of every equivalence class and whose closure contains at least one representative of every equivalence class.

```

locale fundamental_region = modgrp_subgroup +
  fixes R :: "complex set"
  assumes "open": "open R"
  assumes subset: " $R \subseteq \{z. \text{Im } z > 0\}$ "
  assumes unique: " $\bigwedge x y. x \in R \implies y \in R \implies \text{rel } x y \implies x = y$ "
  assumes equiv_in_closure: " $\bigwedge x. \text{Im } x > 0 \implies \exists y \in \text{closure } R. \text{rel } x y$ "
  "
begin

```

The uniqueness property can be extended to the closure of  $R$ :

```

lemma unique':
  assumes " $x \in R$ " " $y \in \text{closure } R$ " " $\text{rel } x y$ " " $\text{Im } y > 0$ "
  shows " $x = y$ "
  <proof>

```

```

lemma
  pole_modgrp_not_in_region [simp]: "pole_modgrp  $f \notin R$ " and
  pole_image_modgrp_not_in_region [simp]: "pole_image_modgrp  $f \notin R$ "
  <proof>

```

```

end

```

### 4.2 The standard fundamental region

The standard fundamental region  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$  consists of all the points  $z$  in the upper half plane with  $|z| > 1$  and  $|\text{Re}(z)| < \frac{1}{2}$ .

**definition** *std\_fund\_region* :: "complex set" (" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ ") where  
" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma = \text{-cball } 0 \ 1 \cap \text{Re } \text{-} \{ -1/2 < .. < 1/2 \} \cap \{ z. \text{Im } z > 0 \}$ "

The following version of  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$  is what Apostol refers to as the closure of  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ , but it is actually only part of the closure: since each point at the border of the fundamental region is equivalent to its mirror image w.r.t. the  $\text{Im}(z) = 0$  axis, we only want one of these copies to be in  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma'$ , and we choose the left one.

So  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma'$  is actually  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$  plus all the points on the left border plus all points on the left half of the semicircle.

**definition** *std\_fund\_region'* :: "complex set" (" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma'$ ") where  
" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma' = \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \cup (\text{-ball } 0 \ 1 \cap \text{Re } \text{-} \{ -1/2 .. 0 \} \cap \{ z. \text{Im } z > 0 \})$ "

**lemma** *std\_fund\_region\_altdef*:  
" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma = \{ z. \text{norm } z > 1 \wedge \text{norm } (z + \text{cnj } z) < 1 \wedge \text{Im } z > 0 \}$ "  
<proof>

**lemma** *in\_std\_fund\_region\_iff*:  
" $z \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \iff \text{norm } z > 1 \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{ -1/2 < .. < 1/2 \} \wedge \text{Im } z > 0$ "  
<proof>

**lemma** *in\_std\_fund\_region'\_iff*:  
" $z \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \iff \text{Im } z > 0 \wedge ((\text{norm } z > 1 \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{ -1/2 .. < 1/2 \}) \vee (\text{norm } z = 1 \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{ -1/2 .. 0 \}))$ "  
<proof>

**lemma** *open\_std\_fund\_region [simp, intro]*: "open  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
<proof>

**lemma** *Im\_std\_fund\_region*: " $z \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \implies \text{Im } z > 0$ "  
<proof>

We now show that the closure of the standard fundamental region contains exactly those points  $z$  with  $|z| \geq 1$  and  $|\text{Re}(z)| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ .

**context**

**fixes**  $S \ S'$  :: "(real  $\times$  real) set" and  $T$  :: "complex set"  
**fixes**  $f$  :: "real  $\times$  real  $\Rightarrow$  complex" and  $g$  :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  real  $\times$  real"  
**defines** " $f \equiv (\lambda(x,y). \text{Complex } x \ (y + \text{sqrt } (1 - x \wedge 2)))$ "  
**defines** " $g \equiv (\lambda z. (\text{Re } z, \text{Im } z - \text{sqrt } (1 - \text{Re } z \wedge 2)))$ "  
**defines** " $S \equiv (\{ -1/2 < .. < 1/2 \} \times \{ 0 < .. \})$ "  
**defines** " $S' \equiv (\{ -1/2 .. 1/2 \} \times \{ 0 .. \})$ "  
**defines** " $T \equiv \{ z. \text{norm } z \geq 1 \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{ -1/2 .. 1/2 \} \wedge \text{Im } z \geq 0 \}$ "

**begin**

**lemma** *image\_subset\_std\_fund\_region*: " $f \text{ ' } S \subseteq \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
<proof>

**lemma** *image\_std\_fund\_region\_subset*: " $g \text{ ' } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \subseteq S$ "

$\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *std\_fund\_region\_map\_inverses*: " $f (g x) = x$ " " $g (f y) = y$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_std\_fund\_region1*: "*bij\_betw*  $f$   $S$   $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_std\_fund\_region2*: "*bij\_betw*  $g$   $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$   $S$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *image\_subset\_std\_fund\_region'*: " $f ' S' \subseteq T$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *image\_std\_fund\_region\_subset'*: " $g ' T \subseteq S$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_std\_fund\_region1'*: "*bij\_betw*  $f$   $S'$   $T$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_std\_fund\_region2'*: "*bij\_betw*  $g$   $T$   $S'$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *closure\_std\_fund\_region*: "*closure*  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma = T$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *in\_closure\_std\_fund\_region\_iff*:  
" $x \in \text{closure } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \iff \text{norm } x \geq 1 \wedge \text{Re } x \in \{-1/2..1/2\} \wedge \text{Im } x \geq 0$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *frontier\_std\_fund\_region*:  
"*frontier*  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma =$   
 $\{z. \text{norm } z \geq 1 \wedge \text{Im } z > 0 \wedge |\text{Re } z| = 1 / 2\} \cup$   
 $\{z. \text{norm } z = 1 \wedge \text{Im } z > 0 \wedge |\text{Re } z| \leq 1 / 2\}$ " (is " $_ = ?rhs$ ")  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *std\_fund\_region'\_subset\_closure*: " $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \subseteq \text{closure } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *std\_fund\_region'\_superset*: " $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma \subseteq \mathcal{R}_\Gamma'$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *in\_std\_fund\_region'\_not\_on\_frontier\_iff*:  
**assumes** " $z \notin \text{frontier } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
**shows** " $z \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \iff z \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *simply\_connected\_std\_fund\_region*: "*simply\_connected*  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

```

lemma simply_connected_closure_std_fund_region: "simply_connected (closure
 $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ )"
⟨proof⟩

lemma std_fund_region'_subset: " $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \subseteq \text{closure } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma closure_std_fund_region_Im_pos: "closure  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma \subseteq \{z. \text{Im } z > 0\}$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma closure_std_fund_region_Im_ge: "closure  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma \subseteq \{z. \text{Im } z \geq \text{sqrt } 3 / 2\}$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma std_fund_region'_minus_std_fund_region:
" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma' - \mathcal{R}_\Gamma =$ 
   $\{z. \text{norm } z = 1 \wedge \text{Im } z > 0 \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{-1/2..0\}\} \cup \{z. \text{Re } z = -1$ 
   $/ 2 \wedge \text{Im } z \geq \text{sqrt } 3 / 2\}$ "
(is "?lhs = ?rhs")
⟨proof⟩

lemma closure_std_fund_region_minus_std_fund_region':
"closure  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma - \mathcal{R}_\Gamma' =$ 
   $\{z. \text{norm } z = 1 \wedge \text{Im } z > 0 \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{0<..1/2\}\} \cup \{z. \text{Re } z = 1 /$ 
   $2 \wedge \text{Im } z \geq \text{sqrt } 3 / 2\}$ "
(is "?lhs = ?rhs")
⟨proof⟩

lemma cis_in_std_fund_region'_iff:
assumes " $\varphi \in \{0..pi\}$ "
shows " $\text{cis } \varphi \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \iff \varphi \in \{pi/2..2*pi/3\}$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma imag_axis_in_std_fund_region'_iff: " $y *_R i \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \iff y \geq 1$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma vertical_left_in_std_fund_region'_iff:
" $-1 / 2 + y *_R i \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma' \iff y \geq \text{sqrt } 3 / 2$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma std_fund_region'_border_aux1:
" $\{z. \text{norm } z = 1 \wedge 0 < \text{Im } z \wedge \text{Re } z \in \{-1/2..0\}\} = \text{cis } \{ \{pi / 2..2 /$ 
   $3 * pi\}$ "
⟨proof⟩

lemma std_fund_region'_border_aux2:
" $\{z. \text{Re } z = -1 / 2 \wedge \text{sqrt } 3 / 2 \leq \text{Im } z\} = (\lambda x. -1 / 2 + x *_R i) \{$ 
   $\text{sqrt } 3 / 2.. \}$ "

```

*<proof>*

```
lemma compact_std_fund_region:  
  assumes "B > 1"  
  shows "compact (closure  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma \cap \{z. \text{Im } z \leq B\})"$   
  <proof>
```

end

### 4.3 Proving that the standard region is fundamental

```
lemma norm_open_segment_less:  
  fixes x y z :: "'a :: euclidean_space"  
  assumes "norm x ≤ norm y" "z ∈ open_segment x y"  
  shows "norm z < norm y"  
  <proof>
```

Lemma 1

```
lemma (in complex_lattice) std_fund_region_fundamental_lemma1:  
  obtains  $\omega_1' \omega_2' :: \text{complex}$  and  $a b c d :: \text{int}$   
  where " $|a * d - b * c| = 1$ "  
        " $\omega_2' = \text{of\_int } a * \omega_2 + \text{of\_int } b * \omega_1$ "  
        " $\omega_1' = \text{of\_int } c * \omega_2 + \text{of\_int } d * \omega_1$ "  
        " $\text{Im } (\omega_2' / \omega_1') \neq 0$ "  
        " $\text{norm } \omega_1' \leq \text{norm } \omega_2'$ " " $\text{norm } \omega_2' \leq \text{norm } (\omega_1' + \omega_2')$ " " $\text{norm } \omega_2'$   
 $\leq \text{norm } (\omega_1' - \omega_2')$ "  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma (in complex_lattice) std_fund_region_fundamental_lemma2:  
  obtains  $\omega_1' \omega_2' :: \text{complex}$  and  $a b c d :: \text{int}$   
  where " $a * d - b * c = 1$ "  
        " $\omega_2' = \text{of\_int } a * \omega_2 + \text{of\_int } b * \omega_1$ "  
        " $\omega_1' = \text{of\_int } c * \omega_2 + \text{of\_int } d * \omega_1$ "  
        " $\text{Im } (\omega_2' / \omega_1') \neq 0$ "  
        " $\text{norm } \omega_1' \leq \text{norm } \omega_2'$ " " $\text{norm } \omega_2' \leq \text{norm } (\omega_1' + \omega_2')$ " " $\text{norm } \omega_2'$   
 $\leq \text{norm } (\omega_1' - \omega_2')$ "  
  <proof>
```

Theorem 2.2

```
lemma std_fund_region_fundamental_aux1:  
  assumes " $\text{Im } \tau' > 0$ "  
  obtains  $\tau$  where " $\text{Im } \tau > 0$ " " $\tau \sim_\Gamma \tau'$ " " $\text{norm } \tau \geq 1$ " " $\text{norm } (\tau + 1) \geq$   
 $\text{norm } \tau$ " " $\text{norm } (\tau - 1) \geq \text{norm } \tau$ "  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma std_fund_region_fundamental_aux2:  
  assumes " $\text{norm } (z + 1) \geq \text{norm } z$ " " $\text{norm } (z - 1) \geq \text{norm } z$ "  
  shows " $\text{Re } z \in \{-1/2..1/2\}$ "  
  <proof>
```

```

lemma std_fund_region_fundamental_aux3:
  fixes x y :: complex
  assumes xy: "x ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ " "y ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  assumes f: "y = apply_modgrp f x"
  defines "c ≡ modgrp_c f"
  defines "d ≡ modgrp_d f"
  assumes c: "c ≠ 0"
  shows "Im y < Im x"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma std_fund_region_fundamental_aux4:
  fixes x y :: complex
  assumes xy: "x ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ " "y ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  assumes f: "y = apply_modgrp f x"
  shows "f = 1"
⟨proof⟩

```

Theorem 2.3

```

interpretation std_fund_region: fundamental_region UNIV std_fund_region
⟨proof⟩

```

```

theorem std_fund_region_no_fixed_point:
  assumes "z ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  assumes "apply_modgrp f z = z"
  shows "f = 1"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma std_fund_region_no_fixed_point':
  assumes "z ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  assumes "apply_modgrp f z = apply_modgrp g z"
  shows "f = g"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma equiv_point_in_std_fund_region':
  assumes "Im z > 0"
  obtains z' where "z ~ $\Gamma$  z'" "z' ∈  $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ '"
⟨proof⟩

```

The image of the fundamental region under a unimodular transformation is again a fundamental region.

```

locale std_fund_region_image =
  fixes f :: modgrp and R :: "complex set"
  defines "R ≡ apply_modgrp f ' $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ '"
begin

```

```

lemma R_altdf: "R = {z. Im z > 0} ∩ apply_modgrp (inverse f) -' $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ '"
⟨proof⟩

```

**lemma** *R\_altdef*: " $R = \text{apply\_modgrp} (\text{inverse } f) - ' \mathcal{R}_\Gamma "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**sublocale** *fundamental\_region UNIV R*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**end**

#### 4.4 The corner point of the standard fundamental region

The point  $\rho = \exp(2/3\pi) = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$  is the left corner of the standard fundamental region, and its reflection on the imaginary axis (which is the same as its image under  $z \mapsto -1/z$ ) forms the right corner.

**definition** *modfun\_rho* (" $\rho$ ") **where**  
 " $\rho = \text{cis} (2 / 3 * \text{pi}) "$ "

**lemma** *modfun\_rho\_altdef*: " $\rho = -1 / 2 + \text{sqrt } 3 / 2 * i "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *Re\_modfun\_rho [simp]*: " $\text{Re } \rho = -1 / 2 "$ "  
**and** *Im\_modfun\_rho [simp]*: " $\text{Im } \rho = \text{sqrt } 3 / 2 "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *norm\_modfun\_rho [simp]*: " $\text{norm } \rho = 1 "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modfun\_rho\_plus\_1\_eq*: " $\rho + 1 = \exp (\text{pi} / 3 * i) "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *norm\_modfun\_rho\_plus\_1 [simp]*: " $\text{norm} (\rho + 1) = 1 "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *cnj\_modfun\_rho*: " $\text{cnj } \rho = -\rho - 1 "$ "  
**and** *cnj\_modfun\_rho\_plus1*: " $\text{cnj} (\rho + 1) = -\rho "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modfun\_rho\_cube*: " $\rho ^ 3 = 1 "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modfun\_rho\_power\_mod3\_reduce*: " $\rho ^ n = \rho ^ (n \text{ mod } 3) "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *modfun\_rho\_power\_mod3\_reduce'*: " $n \geq 3 \implies \rho ^ n = \rho ^ (n \text{ mod } 3) "$ "  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemmas** *[simp] = modfun\_rho\_power\_mod3\_reduce'* [*of "numeral num" for num*]

**lemma** *modfun\_rho\_square*: " $\rho ^ 2 = -\rho - 1 "$ "

```

    <proof>

lemma modfun_rho_not_real [simp]: " $\rho \notin \mathbb{R}$ "
  <proof>

lemma modfun_rho_nonzero [simp]: " $\rho \neq 0$ "
  <proof>

lemma modfun_rho_not_one [simp]: " $\rho \neq 1$ "
  <proof>

lemma i_neq_modfun_rho [simp]: " $i \neq \rho$ "
  and i_neq_modfun_rho_plus1 [simp]: " $i \neq \rho + 1$ "
  and modfun_rho_neg_i [simp]: " $\rho \neq i$ "
  and modfun_rho_plus1_neg_i [simp]: " $\rho + 1 \neq i$ "
  <proof>

lemma i_in_closure_std_fund_region [intro, simp]: " $i \in \text{closure } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  and i_in_std_fund_region' [intro, simp]: " $i \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  and modfun_rho_in_closure_std_fund_region [intro, simp]: " $\rho \in \text{closure } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  and modfun_rho_in_std_fund_region' [intro, simp]: " $\rho \in \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  and modfun_rho_plus1_notin_closure_std_fund_region [intro, simp]: " $\rho + 1 \in \text{closure } \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  and modfun_rho_plus1_notin_std_fund_region' [intro, simp]: " $\rho + 1 \notin \mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ "
  <proof>

lemma modfun_rho_power_eq_1_iff: " $\rho^n = 1 \iff 3 \text{ dvd } n$ "
  <proof>

4.5 Fundamental regions for congruence subgroups

context hecke_prime_subgroup
begin

definition std_fund_region_cong (" $\mathcal{R}$ ") where
  " $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \cup (\bigcup_{k \in \{0..<p\}}. (\lambda z. -1 / (z + \text{of\_int } k)) ' \mathcal{R}_\Gamma)$ "

lemma std_fund_region_cong_altdef:
  " $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{R}_\Gamma \cup (\bigcup_{k \in \{0..<p\}}. \text{apply\_modgrp } (S\_shift\_modgrp } k) ' \mathcal{R}_\Gamma)$ "
  <proof>

lemma closure_UN_finite: " $\text{finite } A \implies \text{closure } (\bigcup A) = (\bigcup_{X \in A}. \text{closure } X)$ "
  <proof>

sublocale std_region: fundamental_region  $\Gamma$  '  $\mathcal{R}$ 

```

*<proof>*

**end**

```
bundle modfun_region_notation
begin
notation std_fund_region (" $\mathcal{R}_\Gamma$ ")
notation modfun_rho (" $\varrho$ ")
end
```

```
unbundle no_modfun_region_notation
```

**end**

## 5 Elliptic Functions

```
theory Elliptic_Functions
  imports Complex_Lattices
begin
```

### 5.1 Definition

In the context of a complex lattice  $\Lambda$ , a function is called *elliptic* if it is meromorphic and periodic w.r.t. the lattice.

```
locale elliptic_function = complex_lattice_periodic  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ 
  for  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  :: complex and  $f$  :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" +
  assumes meromorphic: " $f$  meromorphic_on UNIV"
```

We call a function *nicely elliptic* if it additionally is nicely meromorphic, i.e. it has no removable singularities and returns 0 at each pole. It is easy to convert elliptic functions into nicely elliptic ones using the *remove\_sings* operator and lift results from the nicely elliptic setting to the “regular” elliptic one.

```
locale nicely_elliptic_function = complex_lattice_periodic  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ 
  for  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  :: complex and  $f$  :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" +
  assumes nicely_meromorphic: " $f$  nicely_meromorphic_on UNIV"
```

```
locale elliptic_function_remove_sings = elliptic_function
begin
```

```
sublocale remove_sings: nicely_elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  "remove_sings
 $f$ "
<proof>
```

**end**

```

context elliptic_function
begin

interpretation elliptic_function_remove_sings ⟨proof⟩

lemma isolated_singularity [simp, singularity_intros]: "isolated_singularity_at
f z"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma not_essential [simp, singularity_intros]: "not_essential f z"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma meromorphic' [meromorphic_intros]: "f meromorphic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma meromorphic'' [meromorphic_intros]:
  assumes "g analytic_on A"
  shows "(λx. f (g x)) meromorphic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

Due to the lattice-periodicity of  $f$ , its derivative, zeros, poles, multiplicities,
and residues are also all lattice-periodic.

sublocale zeros: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "isolated_zero f"
  ⟨proof⟩

sublocale poles: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "is_pole f"
  ⟨proof⟩

sublocale zorder: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "zorder f"
  ⟨proof⟩

sublocale deriv: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "deriv f"
  ⟨proof⟩

sublocale higher_deriv: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "(deriv ^^ n)
f"
  ⟨proof⟩

sublocale residue: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "residue f"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma eventually_remove_sings_eq: "eventually (λw. remove_sings f w =
f w) (cosparse UNIV)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma eventually_remove_sings_eq': "eventually (λw. remove_sings f w
= f w) (at z)"

```

```

    <proof>

lemma isolated_zero_analytic_iff:
  assumes "f analytic_on {z}" "¬(∃z∈UNIV. f z = 0)"
  shows "isolated_zero f z ↔ f z = 0"
<proof>

end

context nicely_elliptic_function
begin

lemma nicely_meromorphic' [meromorphic_intros]: "f nicely_meromorphic_on
A"
  <proof>

lemma analytic:
  assumes "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ ¬is_pole f z"
  shows "f analytic_on A"
  <proof>

lemma holomorphic:
  assumes "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ ¬is_pole f z"
  shows "f holomorphic_on A"
  <proof>

lemma continuous_on:
  assumes "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ ¬is_pole f z"
  shows "continuous_on A f"
  <proof>

sublocale elliptic_function ω1 ω2 f
<proof>

lemma analytic_at_iff_not_pole: "f analytic_on {z} ↔ ¬is_pole f z"
  <proof>

lemma constant_or_avoid: "f = (λ_. c) ∨ (∃z∈UNIV. f z ≠ c)"
  <proof>

lemma isolated_zero_iff:
  assumes "f ≠ (λ_. 0)"
  shows "isolated_zero f z ↔ ¬is_pole f z ∧ f z = 0"
  <proof>

end

```

## 5.2 Basic results about zeros and poles

In this section we will show that an elliptic function has the same number of poles in any period parallelogram. This number is called its *order*. Then we will show that the number of zeros in a period parallelogram is also equal to its order, and that there are no elliptic functions with order 1 and no non-constant elliptic functions with order 0.

```
context elliptic_function
begin
```

Due to its meromorphicity and the fact that the period parallelograms are bounded, an elliptic function can only have a finite number of poles and zeros in a period parallelogram.

```
lemma finite_poles_in_parallelogram: "finite {z ∈ period_parallelogram
orig. is_pole f z}"
⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma finite_zeros_in_parallelogram: "finite {z ∈ period_parallelogram
orig. isolated_zero f z}"
⟨proof⟩
```

The *order* of an elliptic function is the number of its poles inside a period parallelogram, with multiplicity taken into account. We will later show that this is also the number of zeros.

```
definition (in complex_lattice) elliptic_order : "(complex ⇒ complex)
⇒ nat" where
  "elliptic_order f = (∑ z | z ∈ period_parallelogram 0 ∧ is_pole f z.
nat (-zorder f z))"
```

```
lemma elliptic_order_const [simp]: "elliptic_order (λx. c) = 0"
⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma poles_eq_elliptic_order:
  "(∑ z | z ∈ period_parallelogram orig ∧ is_pole f z. nat (-zorder f
z)) = elliptic_order f"
⟨proof⟩
```

```
end
```

```
context nicely_elliptic_function
begin
```

The order of a (nicely) elliptic function is zero iff it is constant. We will later lift this to non-nicely elliptic functions, where we get that the order is zero iff the function is *mostly* constant (i.e. constant except for a sparse set).

In combination with our other results relating `elliptic_order` to the number of zeros and poles inside period parallelograms, this corresponds to Theorems 1.4 and 1.5 in Apostol's book.

```
lemma elliptic_order_eq_0_iff: "elliptic_order f = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  f constant_on UNIV"
<proof>
```

```
lemma order_pos_iff: "elliptic_order f > 0  $\longleftrightarrow$   $\neg$ f constant_on UNIV"
<proof>
```

The following lemma allows us to evaluate an integral of the form  $\int_P h(w)f'(w)/f(w) dw$  more easily, where  $P$  is the path along the border of a period parallelogram. Note that this only works if there are no zeros or pole on the border of the parallelogram.

```
lemma argument_principle_f_gen:
  fixes orig :: complex
  defines " $\gamma \equiv$  parallelogram_path orig  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ "
  assumes h: "h holomorphic_on UNIV"
  assumes nz: " $\bigwedge z. z \in$  path_image  $\gamma \implies f z \neq 0 \wedge \neg$ is_pole f z"
  shows "contour_integral  $\gamma$  ( $\lambda x. h x * deriv f x / f x$ ) =
        contour_integral (linepath orig (orig +  $\omega_1$ ))
          ( $\lambda z. (h z - h (z + \omega_2)) * deriv f z / f z$ ) -
        contour_integral (linepath orig (orig +  $\omega_2$ ))
          ( $\lambda z. (h z - h (z + \omega_1)) * deriv f z / f z$ )"
<proof>
```

Using our lemma with  $h(z) = 1$ , we immediately get the fact that the integral over  $f'(z)/f(z)$  vanishes.

```
lemma argument_principle_f_1:
  fixes orig :: complex
  defines " $\gamma \equiv$  parallelogram_path orig  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ "
  assumes nz: " $\bigwedge z. z \in$  path_image  $\gamma \implies f z \neq 0 \wedge \neg$ is_pole f z"
  shows "contour_integral (parallelogram_path orig  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ ) ( $\lambda x. deriv f x / f x$ ) = 0"
<proof>
```

Using our lemma with  $h(z) = z$ , we see that the integral over  $zf'(z)/f(z)$  does not vanish, but it is of the form  $2\pi i\omega$ , where  $\omega \in \Lambda$ .

```
lemma argument_principle_f_z:
  fixes orig :: complex
  defines " $\gamma \equiv$  parallelogram_path orig  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$ "
  assumes wf: " $\bigwedge z. z \in$  path_image  $\gamma \implies f z \neq 0 \wedge \neg$ is_pole f z"
  shows "contour_integral  $\gamma$  ( $\lambda z. z * deriv f z / f z$ ) / (2*pi*i)  $\in$   $\Lambda$ "
<proof>
```

By using the fact that the integral  $f'(z)/f(z)$  along the border of a period parallelogram vanishes, we get the following fact: The number of zeros in the period parallelogram equals the number of poles, i.e. the order.

The only difficulty left here is to show that 1. the number of zeros is invariant under which period parallelogram we choose, and 2. there is a period parallelogram whose borders do not contain any zeros or poles.

This is essentially Theorem 1.8 in Apostol's book.

```
lemma zeros_eq_elliptic_order_aux:
  "( $\sum z \mid z \in \text{period\_parallelogram orig} \wedge \text{isolated\_zero } f z. \text{nat } (\text{zorder } f z)$ ) = elliptic_order f"
  <proof>
```

In the same vein, we get the following from our earlier result about the integral over  $zf'(z)/f(z)$ : The sum over all zeros and poles (counted with multiplicity, where poles have negative multiplicity) in a period parallelogram is a lattice point.

This is Exercise 1.2 in Apostol's book.

```
lemma sum_zeros_poles_in_lattice_aux:
  defines "Z  $\equiv (\lambda \text{orig. } \{z \in \text{period\_parallelogram orig. isolated\_zero } f z \vee \text{is\_pole } f z\})$ "
  defines "S  $\equiv (\lambda \text{orig. } \sum z \in Z \text{ orig. of\_int } (\text{zorder } f z) * z)$ "
  shows "S orig  $\in \Lambda$ "
  <proof>
```

Again, similarly: The residues in a period parallelogram sum to 0.

```
lemma sum_residues_eq_0_aux:
  defines "Q  $\equiv (\lambda \text{orig. } \{z \in \text{period\_parallelogram orig. is\_pole } f z\})$ "
  defines "S  $\equiv (\lambda \text{orig. } \sum z \in Q \text{ orig. residue } f z)$ "
  shows "S orig  $\in \Lambda$ "
  <proof>
```

end

We now lift everything we have done to non-nice elliptic functions.

```
context elliptic_function
begin
```

```
lemma elliptic_order_remove_sings [simp]: "elliptic_order (remove_sings f) = elliptic_order f"
  <proof>
```

```
interpretation elliptic_function_remove_sings <proof>
```

```
theorem zeros_eq_elliptic_order:
  "( $\sum z \mid z \in \text{period\_parallelogram orig} \wedge \text{isolated\_zero } f z. \text{nat } (\text{zorder } f z)$ ) = elliptic_order f"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma card_poles_le_order: "card {z  $\in$  period\_parallelogram orig. is\_pole f z}  $\leq$  elliptic_order f"
```

*<proof>*

**lemma** *card\_zeros\_le\_order*: "card {z∈period\_parallelogram orig. isolated\_zero f z} ≤ elliptic\_order f"

*<proof>*

**corollary** *elliptic\_order\_eq\_0\_iff\_no\_poles*: "elliptic\_order f = 0 ↔ (∀z. ¬is\_pole f z)"

*<proof>*

**corollary** *elliptic\_order\_eq\_0\_iff\_no\_zeros*: "elliptic\_order f = 0 ↔ (∀z. ¬isolated\_zero f z)"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *elliptic\_order\_eq\_0\_iff\_const\_cosparse*:

"elliptic\_order f = 0 ↔ (∃c. ∀<sub>≈</sub>x∈UNIV. f x = c)"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *cosparse\_eq\_or\_avoid*: "(∀<sub>≈</sub>z∈UNIV. f z = c) ∨ (∀<sub>≈</sub>z∈UNIV. f z ≠ c)"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *frequently\_eq\_imp\_almost\_everywhere\_eq*:

assumes "frequently (λz. f z = c) (at z)"

shows "eventually (λz. f z = c) (cosparse UNIV)"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *eventually\_eq\_imp\_almost\_everywhere\_eq*:

assumes "eventually (λz. f z = c) (at z)"

shows "eventually (λz. f z = c) (cosparse UNIV)"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *avoid*: "elliptic\_order f > 0 ⇒ ∀<sub>≈</sub>z∈UNIV. f z ≠ c"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *avoid'*: "elliptic\_order f > 0 ⇒ eventually (λz. f z ≠ c) (at z)"

*<proof>*

**theorem** *sum\_zeros\_poles\_in\_lattice*:

fixes orig :: complex

defines "Z ≡ {z∈period\_parallelogram orig. isolated\_zero f z ∨ is\_pole f z}"

shows "(∑ z∈Z. of\_int (zorder f z) \* z) ∈ Λ"

*<proof>*

**theorem** *sum\_residues\_eq\_0*:

fixes orig :: complex

defines "Q ≡ {z∈period\_parallelogram orig. is\_pole f z}"

**shows** " $(\sum z \in Q. \text{residue } f \ z) \in \Lambda$ "  
 <proof>

An obvious fact that we use at one point: if  $\sum_{x \in A} f(x) = 1$  for  $f(x)$  in the positive integers, then  $A = \{x\}$  for some  $x$  and  $f(x) = 1$ .

**lemma** (in -) *sum\_nat\_eq\_1E*:  
**fixes**  $f :: 'a \Rightarrow \text{nat}$   
**assumes** *sum\_eq*: " $(\sum x \in A. f \ x) = 1$ "  
**assumes** *pos*: " $\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies f \ x > 0$ "  
**obtains**  $x$  **where** " $A = \{x\}$ " " $f \ x = 1$ "  
 <proof>

A simple consequence of our result about the sums of poles and zeros being a lattice point is that there are no elliptic functions of order 1.

If there were such a function, it would have only one zero and one pole (both simple) in the fundamental parallelogram. Since their sum would be a lattice point, they would be equivalent modulo the lattice and thus identical. But a point cannot be both a zero and a pole.

**theorem** *elliptic\_order\_neq\_1*: "*elliptic\_order*  $f \neq 1$ "  
 <proof>

**end**

**locale** *nonconst\_nicely\_elliptic\_function* = *nicely\_elliptic\_function* +  
**assumes** *order\_pos*: "*elliptic\_order*  $f > 0$ "  
**begin**

**lemma** *isolated\_zero\_iff'*: "*isolated\_zero*  $f \ z \longleftrightarrow \neg \text{is\_pole } f \ z \wedge f \ z = 0$ "  
 <proof>

**end**

### 5.3 Even elliptic functions

If an elliptic function is even, i.e.  $f(-z) = f(z)$ , it is invariant not only under the group generated by  $z \mapsto z + \omega_1$  and  $z \mapsto z + \omega_2$ , but also the additional generator  $z \mapsto -z$ .

Since our prototypical example of an elliptic function – the Weierstraß  $\wp$  function – is even, we will examine these a bit more closely here.

**locale** *even\_elliptic\_function* = *elliptic\_function* +  
**assumes** *even*: " $f \ (-z) = f \ z$ "  
**begin**

The Laurent series expansion of an even elliptic function at lattice points and half-lattice points only has even-index coefficients. This also means that, at

lattice and half-lattice points, an even elliptic function can only have zeros and poles of even order.

**lemma**

```

  assumes z: "2 * z ∈ Λ" and "¬(∃z. f z = 0)"
  shows   odd_laurent_coeffs_eq_0: "odd n ⇒ fls_nth (laurent_expansion
f z) n = 0"
        and   even_zorder: "even (zorder f z)"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma lattice_cong': "rel w z ∨ rel w (-z) ⇒ f w = f z"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma eval_to_half_fund_parallelogram: "f (to_half_fund_parallelogram
z) = f z"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma zorder_to_half_fund_parallelogram: "zorder f (to_half_fund_parallelogram
z) = zorder f z"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma zorder_uminus: "zorder f (-z) = zorder f z"
  <proof>

```

**end**

## 5.4 Closure properties of the class of elliptic functions

Elliptic functions are closed under all basic arithmetic operations (addition, subtraction, multiplication, division). Additionally, they are closed under derivative, translation ( $f(z) \rightsquigarrow f(z+c)$ ) and scaling with an integer ( $f(z) \rightsquigarrow f(nz)$ ).

Furthermore, constant functions are elliptic.

**lemma** *elliptic\_function\_unop*:

```

  assumes "elliptic_function ω1 ω2 f"
  assumes "f meromorphic_on UNIV ⇒ (λz. h (f z)) meromorphic_on UNIV"
  shows   "elliptic_function ω1 ω2 (λz. h (f z))"
  <proof>

```

**lemma** *elliptic\_function\_binop*:

```

  assumes "elliptic_function ω1 ω2 f" "elliptic_function ω1 ω2 g"
  assumes "f meromorphic_on UNIV ⇒ g meromorphic_on UNIV ⇒ (λz. h
(f z) (g z)) meromorphic_on UNIV"
  shows   "elliptic_function ω1 ω2 (λz. h (f z) (g z))"
  <proof>

```

```

context complex_lattice
begin

```

```

named_theorems elliptic_function_intros

lemmas (in elliptic_function) [elliptic_function_intros] = elliptic_function_axioms

lemma elliptic_function_const [elliptic_function_intros]:
  "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda_. c$ )"
  <proof>

lemma [elliptic_function_intros]:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows elliptic_function_cmult_left: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. c * f z$ )"
    and elliptic_function_cmult_right: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z * c$ )"
    and elliptic_function_scaleR: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. c' *_R f z$ )"
    and elliptic_function_uminus: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. -f z$ )"
    and elliptic_function_inverse: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \text{inverse } (f z)$ )"
    and elliptic_function_power: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z ^ m$ )"
    and elliptic_function_power_int: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z \text{ powi } n$ )"
  <proof>

lemma [elliptic_function_intros]:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f" "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  g"
  shows elliptic_function_cmult_add: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z + g z$ )"
    and elliptic_function_cmult_diff: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z - g z$ )"
    and elliptic_function_cmult_mult: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z * g z$ )"
    and elliptic_function_cmult_divide: "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f z / g z$ )"
  <proof>

lemma elliptic_function_compose_mult_of_int_left:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f (\text{of\_int } n * z)$ )"
  <proof>

lemma elliptic_function_compose_mult_of_nat_left:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f (\text{of\_nat } n * z)$ )"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma elliptic_function_compose_mult_numeral_left:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f$  (numeral n * z))"
  <proof>

lemma
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows elliptic_function_compose_mult_of_int_right: "elliptic_function
 $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f$  (z * of_int n))"
    and elliptic_function_compose_mult_of_nat_right: "elliptic_function
 $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f$  (z * of_nat m))"
    and elliptic_function_compose_mult_numeral_right: "elliptic_function
 $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f$  (z * numeral num))"
  <proof>

lemma elliptic_function_compose_uminus:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f$  (-z))"
  <proof>

lemma elliptic_function_shift:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. f$  (z + w))"
  <proof>

definition shift_fun :: "'a  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: plus" where
  "shift_fun w f = ( $\lambda z. f$  (z + w))"

lemma elliptic_function_shift' [elliptic_function_intros]:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  (shift_fun w f)"
  <proof>

lemma nicely_elliptic_function_remove_sings [elliptic_function_intros]:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "nicely_elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  (remove_sings f)"
  <proof>

lemma elliptic_function_remove_sings [elliptic_function_intros]:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  (remove_sings f)"
  <proof>

lemma elliptic_function_deriv [elliptic_function_intros]:
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  f"
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  (deriv f)"

```

*<proof>*

```
lemma elliptic_function_higher_deriv [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ "  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ((deriv  $\wedge$  n)  $f$ )"  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma elliptic_function_sum [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes " $\wedge x. x \in X \implies$  elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $f$   $x$ )"  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \sum_{x \in X}. f$   $x$   $z$ )"  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma elliptic_function_prod [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes " $\wedge x. x \in X \implies$  elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $f$   $x$ )"  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \prod_{x \in X}. f$   $x$   $z$ )"  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma elliptic_function_sum_list [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes " $\wedge f. f \in \text{set } fs \implies$  elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ "  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \sum f \leftarrow fs. f$   $z$ )"  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma elliptic_function_prod_list [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes " $\wedge f. f \in \text{set } fs \implies$  elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ "  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \prod f \leftarrow fs. f$   $z$ )"  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma elliptic_function_sum_mset [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes " $\wedge f. f \in \# F \implies$  elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ "  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \sum f \in \# F. f$   $z$ )"  
  <proof>
```

```
lemma elliptic_function_prod_mset [elliptic_function_intros]:  
  assumes " $\wedge f. f \in \# F \implies$  elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $f$ "  
  shows "elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  ( $\lambda z. \prod f \in \# F. f$   $z$ )"  
  <proof>
```

end

## 5.5 Affine transformations and surjectivity

In the following we look at the properties of the elliptic function  $af(z) + b$ , where  $a \neq 0$ . Obviously this function inherits many properties from  $f(z)$ .

```
locale elliptic_function_affine = elliptic_function +  
  fixes a b :: complex and g :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex"  
  defines " $g \equiv \lambda z. a * f$   $z + b$ "  
  assumes nonzero_const: " $a \neq 0$ "  
begin
```

```

sublocale affine: elliptic_function  $\omega_1 \omega_2 g$ 
  <proof>

lemma is_pole_affine_iff: "is_pole g z  $\longleftrightarrow$  is_pole f z"
  <proof>

lemma zorder_pole_affine:
  assumes "is_pole f z"
  shows "zorder g z = zorder f z"
  <proof>

lemma order_affine_eq: "elliptic_order g = elliptic_order f"
  <proof>

```

**end**

One consequence of the above is that a non-constant elliptic function takes on each value in  $\mathbb{C}$  “equally often”. In particular, this means that any non-constant elliptic function is surjective, i.e. for every  $c \in \mathbb{C}$  there exists a preimage  $z$  with  $f(z) = c$  in every period parallelogram.

```

context nonconst_nicely_elliptic_function
begin

theorem surj:
  fixes c :: complex
  obtains z where " $\neg$ is_pole f z" "z  $\in$  period_parallelogram w" "f z = c"
  <proof>

end

end

```

## 6 The Weierstraß $\wp$ Function

```

theory Weierstrass_Elliptic
imports
  Elliptic_Functions
  Modular_Group
begin

```

In this section, we will define the Weierstraß  $\wp$  function, which is in some sense the simplest and most fundamental elliptic function. All elliptic functions can be expressed solely in terms of  $\wp$  and  $\wp'$ .

## 6.1 Preliminary convergence results

We first examine the uniform convergence of the series

$$\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda^*} \frac{1}{(z - \omega)^n}$$

and

$$\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda} \frac{1}{(z - \omega)^n}$$

for fixed  $n \geq 3$ .

The second version is an elliptic function that we call the *Eisenstein function* because setting  $z = 0$  gives us the Eisenstein series. To our knowledge this function does not have a name of its own in the literature.

This is perhaps because it is up to a constant factor, equal to the  $(n - 2)$ -nth derivative of the Weierstraß  $\wp$  function (which we will define a bit afterwards).

```
lemmas [simp del] = div_mult_self1 div_mult_self2 div_mult_self3 div_mult_self4
```

```
context complex_lattice
begin
```

```
lemma  $\omega$ _upper:
```

```
  assumes " $\omega \in$  lattice_layer  $k$ " and " $\alpha > 0$ " and " $k > 0$ "
  shows " $\text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } -\alpha \leq (k * \text{Inf\_para}) \text{ powr } -\alpha$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma sum_ $\omega$ _upper:
```

```
  assumes " $\alpha > 0$ " and " $k > 0$ "
  shows " $(\sum \omega \in$  lattice_layer  $k. \text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } -\alpha) \leq 8 * k \text{ powr } (1-\alpha)$ "
  * Inf_para powr  $-\alpha$ "
  (is "?lhs  $\leq$  ?rhs")
  <proof>
```

```
lemma lattice_layer_lower:
```

```
  assumes " $\omega \in$  lattice_layer  $k$ " and " $k > 0$ "
  shows " $(k * (\text{if } \alpha \geq 0 \text{ then Inf\_para else Sup\_para})) \text{ powr } \alpha \leq \text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } \alpha$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma sum_lattice_layer_lower:
```

```
  fixes  $\alpha ::$  real
  assumes " $k > 0$ "
  defines " $C \equiv (\text{if } \alpha \geq 0 \text{ then Sup\_para else Inf\_para})$ "
  shows " $8 * k \text{ powr } (1-\alpha) * C \text{ powr } -\alpha \leq (\sum \omega \in$  lattice_layer  $k. \text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } -\alpha)$ "
```

(is "?lhs ≤ ?rhs")  
 <proof>

**lemma** *converges\_absolutely\_iff\_aux1*:  
 fixes  $\alpha :: \text{real}$   
 assumes " $\alpha > 2$ "  
 shows "summable  $(\lambda i. \sum_{\omega \in \text{lattice\_layer } (\text{Suc } i)}. 1 / \text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } \alpha)$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma** *converges\_absolutely\_iff\_aux2*:  
 fixes  $\alpha :: \text{real}$   
 assumes "summable  $(\lambda i. \sum_{\omega \in \text{lattice\_layer } (\text{Suc } i)}. 1 / \text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } \alpha)$ "  
 shows " $\alpha > 2$ "  
 <proof>

Apostol's Lemma 1

**lemma** *converges\_absolutely\_iff*:  
 fixes  $\alpha :: \text{real}$   
 shows " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / \text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } \alpha) \text{ summable\_on } \Lambda^* \longleftrightarrow \alpha > 2$ "  
 (is "?P  $\longleftrightarrow$  \_")  
 <proof>

**lemma** *bounded\_lattice\_finite*:  
 assumes "bounded B"  
 shows "finite  $(\Lambda \cap B)$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma** *closed\_subset\_lattice*: " $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda \implies \text{closed } \Lambda'$ "  
 <proof>

**corollary** *closed\_lattice0*: " $\text{closed } \Lambda^*$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma** *weierstrass\_summand\_bound*:  
 assumes " $\alpha \geq 1$ " and " $R > 0$ "  
 obtains M where  
 " $M > 0$ "  
 " $\bigwedge \omega z. [\omega \in \Lambda; \text{cmod } \omega > R; \text{cmod } z \leq R] \implies \text{norm } (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha \leq M * (\text{norm } \omega \text{ powr } -\alpha)$ "  
 <proof>

Lemma 2 on Apostol p. 8

**lemma** *weierstrass\_aux\_converges\_absolutely\_in\_disk*:  
 assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $R > 0$ " and " $z \in \text{cball } 0 R$ "  
 shows " $(\lambda \omega. \text{cmod } (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha) \text{ summable\_on } (\Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R)$ "  
 <proof>

```

lemma weierstrass_aux_converges_absolutely_in_disk':
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{nat}$  and  $R :: \text{real}$  and  $z :: \text{complex}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $R > 0$ " and " $z \in \text{cball } 0 R$ "
  shows " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / \text{norm } (z - \omega) ^ \alpha) \text{ summable\_on } (\Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R)$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_aux_converges_in_disk':
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{nat}$  and  $R :: \text{real}$  and  $z :: \text{complex}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $R > 0$ " and " $z \in \text{cball } 0 R$ "
  shows " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / (z - \omega) ^ \alpha) \text{ summable\_on } (\Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R)$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_aux_converges_absolutely:
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{real}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$ "
  shows " $(\lambda \omega. \text{norm } (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha) \text{ summable\_on } \Lambda'$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_aux_converges_absolutely':
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{nat}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$ "
  shows " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / \text{norm } (z - \omega) ^ \alpha) \text{ summable\_on } \Lambda'$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_aux_converges:
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{real}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$ "
  shows " $(\lambda \omega. (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha) \text{ summable\_on } \Lambda'$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_aux_converges':
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{nat}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " and " $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$ "
  shows " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / (z - \omega) ^ \alpha) \text{ summable\_on } \Lambda'$ "
  <proof>

lemma
  fixes  $\alpha R :: \text{real}$ 
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " " $R > 0$ "
  shows weierstrass_aux_converges_absolutely_uniformly_in_disk:
    "uniform_limit (cball 0 R)
      ( $\lambda X z. \sum_{\omega \in X}. \text{norm } ((z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha)$ )
      ( $\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R}. \text{norm } ((z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha)$ )
      (finite_subsets_at_top ( $\Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R$ ))" (is
?th1)
  and weierstrass_aux_converges_uniformly_in_disk:
    "uniform_limit (cball 0 R)
      ( $\lambda X z. \sum_{\omega \in X}. (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha$ )
      ( $\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R}. (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha$ )

```

```

                                (finite_subsets_at_top (Λ - cball 0 R))" (is
?th2)
⟨proof⟩

lemma
  fixes n :: nat and R :: real
  assumes "n > 2" "R > 0"
  shows weierstrass_aux_converges_absolutely_uniformly_in_disk':
    "uniform_limit (cball 0 R)
      (λX z. ∑ ω∈X. norm (1 / (z - ω) ^ n))
      (λz. ∑ ∞ ω∈Λ-cball 0 R. norm (1 / (z - ω) ^
n))
                                (finite_subsets_at_top (Λ - cball 0 R))" (is
?th1)
  and weierstrass_aux_converges_uniformly_in_disk':
    "uniform_limit (cball 0 R)
      (λX z. ∑ ω∈X. 1 / (z - ω) powr n)
      (λz. ∑ ∞ ω∈Λ-cball 0 R. 1 / (z - ω) ^ n)
      (finite_subsets_at_top (Λ - cball 0 R))" (is
?th2)
⟨proof⟩

definition eisenstein_fun_aux :: "nat ⇒ complex ⇒ complex" where
  "eisenstein_fun_aux n z =
    (if n = 0 then 1 else if n < 3 ∨ z ∈ Λ* then 0 else (∑ ∞ ω∈Λ*.
1 / (z - ω) ^ n))"

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_at_pole_eq_0: "n > 0 ⇒ z ∈ Λ* ⇒ eisenstein_fun_aux
n z = 0"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_has_sum:
  assumes "n ≥ 3" "z ∉ Λ*"
  shows "((λω. 1 / (z - ω) ^ n) has_sum eisenstein_fun_aux n z) Λ*"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_minus: "eisenstein_fun_aux n (-z) = (-1) ^ n
* eisenstein_fun_aux n z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_even_minus: "even n ⇒ eisenstein_fun_aux
n (-z) = eisenstein_fun_aux n z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_odd_minus: "odd n ⇒ eisenstein_fun_aux n
(-z) = -eisenstein_fun_aux n z"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_has_field_derivative_aux:
  fixes  $\alpha :: \text{nat}$  and  $R :: \text{real}$ 
  defines " $F \equiv (\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda\text{-cball } 0 R. 1 / (z - \omega) ^ \alpha)$ "
  assumes " $\alpha > 2$ " " $R > 0$ " " $w \in \text{ball } 0 R$ "
  shows " $(F \alpha \text{ has\_field\_derivative -of\_nat } \alpha * F (\text{Suc } \alpha) w) (\text{at } w)$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_has_field_derivative:
  assumes  $z: "z \notin \Lambda^*" \text{ and } n: "n \geq 3"$ 
  shows " $(\text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n \text{ has\_field\_derivative -of\_nat } n * \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } (\text{Suc } n) z) (\text{at } z)$ "
  <proof>

lemmas eisenstein_fun_aux_has_field_derivative' [derivative_intros] =
  DERIV_chain2[OF eisenstein_fun_aux_has_field_derivative]

lemma higher_deriv_eisenstein_fun_aux:
  assumes  $z: "z \notin \Lambda^*" \text{ and } n: "n \geq 3"$ 
  shows " $(\text{deriv } ^ m) (\text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n) z =$ 
     $(-1) ^ m * \text{pochhammer } (\text{of\_nat } n) m * \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } (n$ 
   $+ m) z$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_holomorphic: "eisenstein_fun_aux n holomorphic_on
 $-\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_holomorphic' [holomorphic_intros]:
  assumes " $f \text{ holomorphic\_on } A$ " " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows " $(\lambda z. \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n (f z)) \text{ holomorphic\_on } A$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_analytic: "eisenstein_fun_aux n analytic_on
 $-\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_analytic' [analytic_intros]:
  assumes " $f \text{ analytic\_on } A$ " " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows " $(\lambda z. \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n (f z)) \text{ analytic\_on } A$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_continuous_on: "continuous_on  $(-\Lambda^*) (\text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n)$ "
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_continuous_on' [continuous_intros]:
  assumes " $\text{continuous\_on } A f$ " " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows " $\text{continuous\_on } A (\lambda z. \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n (f z))$ "

```

$\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma weierstrass\_aux\_translate:**  
**fixes**  $\alpha :: \text{real}$   
**assumes** " $\alpha > 2$ "  
**shows** " $(\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda} (z + w - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha) = (\sum_{\omega \in (+) (-w) ' \Lambda} (z - \omega) \text{ powr } -\alpha)$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma weierstrass\_aux\_holomorphic:**  
**assumes** " $\alpha > 2$ " " $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$ " "**finite**  $(\Lambda - \Lambda')$ "  
**shows** " $(\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda'} 1 / (z - \omega) ^ \alpha)$  **holomorphic\_on**  $-\Lambda'$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition eisenstein\_fun :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where  
 $"\text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z = (\text{if } n < 3 \vee z \in \Lambda \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } (\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda} 1 / (z - \omega) ^ n))"$**

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_has\_sum:**  
 $"n \geq 3 \implies z \notin \Lambda \implies ((\lambda \omega. 1 / (z - \omega) ^ n) \text{ has\_sum } \text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z) \ \Lambda"$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_at\_pole\_eq\_0:** " $z \in \Lambda \implies \text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z = 0$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_conv\_eisenstein\_fun\_aux:**  
**assumes** " $n \geq 3$ " " $z \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z = \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n \ z + 1 / z ^ n$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_altdef:**  
 $"\text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z = (\text{if } n < 3 \vee z \in \Lambda \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } n \ z + 1 / z ^ n)"$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_minus:** " $\text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ (-z) = (-1) ^ n * \text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_even\_minus:** " $\text{even } n \implies \text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ (-z) = \text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma eisenstein\_fun\_odd\_minus:** " $\text{odd } n \implies \text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ (-z) = -\text{eisenstein\_fun } n \ z$ "  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

```

lemma eisenstein_fun_has_field_derivative:
  assumes "n ≥ 3" "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "(eisenstein_fun n has_field_derivative -of_nat n * eisenstein_fun
(Suc n) z) (at z)"
⟨proof⟩

lemmas eisenstein_fun_has_field_derivative' [derivative_intros] =
  DERIV_chain2[OF eisenstein_fun_has_field_derivative]

lemma eisenstein_fun_holomorphic: "eisenstein_fun n holomorphic_on -Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma higher_deriv_eisenstein_fun:
  assumes z: "z ∉ Λ" and n: "n ≥ 3"
  shows "(deriv ^^ m) (eisenstein_fun n) z =
      (-1) ^ m * pochhammer (of_nat n) m * eisenstein_fun (n +
m) z"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_holomorphic' [holomorphic_intros]:
  assumes "f holomorphic_on A" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ n < 3 ∨ f z ∉ Λ"
  shows "(λz. eisenstein_fun n (f z)) holomorphic_on A"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_analytic: "eisenstein_fun n analytic_on -Λ"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_analytic' [analytic_intros]:
  assumes "f analytic_on A" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ n < 3 ∨ f z ∉ Λ"
  shows "(λz. eisenstein_fun n (f z)) analytic_on A"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_continuous_on: "n ≥ 3 ⇒ continuous_on (-Λ) (eisenstein_fun
n)"
⟨proof⟩

lemma eisenstein_fun_continuous_on' [continuous_intros]:
  assumes "continuous_on A f" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ n < 3 ∨ f z ∉ Λ"
  shows "continuous_on A (λz. eisenstein_fun n (f z))"
⟨proof⟩

sublocale eisenstein_fun: complex_lattice_periodic ω1 ω2 "eisenstein_fun
n"
⟨proof⟩

lemma is_pole_eisenstein_fun:
  assumes "n ≥ 3" "z ∈ Λ"
  shows "is_pole (eisenstein_fun n) z"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

sublocale eisenstein_fun: nicely_elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  "eisenstein_fun
n"
<proof>

lemmas [elliptic_function_intros] =
  eisenstein_fun.elliptic_function_axioms eisenstein_fun.nicely_elliptic_function_axioms

end

```

## 6.2 Definition and basic properties

The Weierstraß  $\wp$  function is in a sense the most basic elliptic function, and we will see later on that all elliptic function can be written as a combination of  $\wp$  and  $\wp'$ .

Its derivative, as we noted before, is equal to our Eisenstein function for  $n = 3$  (up to a constant factor  $-2$ ). The function  $\wp$  itself is somewhat more awkward to define.

```

context complex_lattice begin

```

```

lemma minus_lattice_eq: "uminus '  $\Lambda = \Lambda$  "
<proof>

```

```

lemma minus_latticemz_eq: "uminus '  $\Lambda^* = \Lambda^*$  "
<proof>

```

```

lemma bij_minus_latticemz: "bij_betw uminus  $\Lambda^* \Lambda^*$  "
<proof>

```

```

definition weierstrass_fun_deriv (" $\wp'$ ") where
  "weierstrass_fun_deriv z = -2 * eisenstein_fun 3 z"

```

```

sublocale weierstrass_fun_deriv: elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  weierstrass_fun_deriv
<proof>

```

```

sublocale weierstrass_fun_deriv: nicely_elliptic_function  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  weierstrass_fun_deriv
<proof>

```

```

lemmas [elliptic_function_intros] =
  weierstrass_fun_deriv.elliptic_function_axioms weierstrass_fun_deriv.nicely_elliptic_func

```

```

lemma weierstrass_fun_deriv_minus [simp]: " $\wp'$  (-z) = - $\wp'$  z"
<proof>

```

```

lemma weierstrass_fun_deriv_has_field_derivative:
  assumes "z  $\notin \Lambda$  "
  shows " $\wp'$  has_field_derivative 6 * eisenstein_fun 4 z) (at z)"

```

*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_holomorphic*: " $\wp'$  holomorphic\_on  $-\Lambda$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_holomorphic'* [*holomorphic\_intros*]:  
assumes "*f* holomorphic\_on *A*" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda$ "  
shows " $(\lambda z. \wp' (f z))$  holomorphic\_on *A*"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_analytic*: " $\wp'$  analytic\_on  $-\Lambda$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_analytic'* [*analytic\_intros*]:  
assumes "*f* analytic\_on *A*" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda$ "  
shows " $(\lambda z. \wp' (f z))$  analytic\_on *A*"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_continuous\_on*: "continuous\_on  $(-\Lambda)$   $\wp'$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_continuous\_on'* [*continuous\_intros*]:  
assumes "continuous\_on *A* *f*" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda$ "  
shows "continuous\_on *A*  $(\lambda z. \wp' (f z))$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *tendsto\_weierstrass\_fun\_deriv* [*tendsto\_intros*]:  
assumes "*f*  $\longrightarrow$  *c*" "*F*" "*c*  $\notin \Lambda$ "  
shows " $(\lambda z. \wp' (f z)) \longrightarrow \wp' c$ " "*F*"  
*<proof>*

The following is the Weierstraß function minus its pole at the origin. By convention, it returns 0 at all its remaining poles.

**definition** *weierstrass\_fun\_aux* :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where  
"*weierstrass\_fun\_aux* *z* = (if *z*  $\in \Lambda^*$  then 0 else  $(\sum_{\infty} \omega \in \Lambda^*. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2))$ )"

This is now the Weierstraß function. Again, it returns 0 at all its poles.

**definition** *weierstrass\_fun* :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" (" $\wp$ ")  
where " $\wp z =$  (if *z*  $\in \Lambda$  then 0 else  $1 / z^2 + \text{weierstrass\_fun\_aux } z$ )"

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_aux\_0* [*simp*]: "*weierstrass\_fun\_aux* 0 = 0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_at\_pole*: " $\omega \in \Lambda \implies \wp \omega = 0$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma**

```

fixes R :: real
assumes "R > 0"
shows weierstrass_fun_aux_converges_absolutely_uniformly_in_disk:
  "uniform_limit (cball 0 R)
    ( $\lambda X z. \sum_{\omega \in X}. \text{norm } (1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2)$ )
    ( $\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R}. \text{norm } (1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2)$ )
    (finite_subsets_at_top (\Lambda - cball 0 R))" (is
?th1)
and weierstrass_fun_aux_converges_uniformly_in_disk:
  "uniform_limit (cball 0 R)
    ( $\lambda X z. \sum_{\omega \in X}. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2$ )
    ( $\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R}. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2$ )
    (finite_subsets_at_top (\Lambda - cball 0 R))" (is
?th2)
<proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_has_field_derivative_aux:
  fixes R :: real
  defines "F  $\equiv (\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R}. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2)$ "
  defines "F'  $\equiv (\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda - \text{cball } 0 R}. 1 / (z - \omega) ^ 3)$ "
  assumes "R > 0" "w  $\in \text{ball } 0 R$ "
  shows "(F has_field_derivative -2 * F' w) (at w)"
<proof>

lemma norm_summable_weierstrass_fun_aux: " $(\lambda \omega. \text{norm } (1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2))$  summable_on  $\Lambda$ "
<proof>

lemma summable_weierstrass_fun_aux: " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2)$  summable_on  $\Lambda$ "
<proof>

lemma weierstrass_summable: " $(\lambda \omega. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2)$  summable_on  $\Lambda^*$ "
<proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_has_sum:
  " $z \notin \Lambda^* \implies ((\lambda \omega. 1 / (z - \omega)^2 - 1 / \omega^2)$  has_sum weierstrass_fun_aux z)  $\Lambda^*$ "
<proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_has_field_derivative:
  defines "F  $\equiv \text{weierstrass\_fun\_aux}$ "
  defines "F'  $\equiv (\lambda z. \sum_{\omega \in \Lambda^*}. 1 / (z - \omega) ^ 3)$ "
  assumes z: " $z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows "(F has_field_derivative -2 * eisenstein_fun_aux 3 z) (at z)"
<proof>

```

```

lemmas weierstrass_fun_aux_has_field_derivative' [derivative_intros]
=
  weierstrass_fun_aux_has_field_derivative [THEN DERIV_chain2]

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_holomorphic: "weierstrass_fun_aux holomorphic_on
- $\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_holomorphic' [holomorphic_intros]:
  assumes "f holomorphic_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows "( $\lambda z. \text{weierstrass\_fun\_aux } (f z)$ ) holomorphic_on A"
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_continuous_on: "continuous_on (- $\Lambda^*$ ) weierstrass_fun_aux"
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_continuous_on' [continuous_intros]:
  assumes "continuous_on A f" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows "continuous_on A ( $\lambda z. \text{weierstrass\_fun\_aux } (f z)$ )"
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_analytic: "weierstrass_fun_aux analytic_on
- $\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_analytic' [analytic_intros]:
  assumes "f analytic_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda^*$ "
  shows "( $\lambda z. \text{weierstrass\_fun\_aux } (f z)$ ) analytic_on A"
  <proof>

lemma deriv_weierstrass_fun_aux:
  " $z \notin \Lambda^* \implies \text{deriv weierstrass\_fun\_aux } z = -2 * \text{eisenstein\_fun\_aux } 3$ 
z"
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_has_field_derivative:
  fixes R :: real
  assumes z: " $z \notin \Lambda$ "
  shows "( $\wp$  has_field_derivative  $\wp'$  z) (at z)"
  <proof>

lemmas weierstrass_fun_has_field_derivative' [derivative_intros] =
  weierstrass_fun_has_field_derivative [THEN DERIV_chain2]

lemma weierstrass_fun_holomorphic: " $\wp$  holomorphic_on - $\Lambda$ "
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_holomorphic' [holomorphic_intros]:

```

**assumes** "f holomorphic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $(\lambda z. \text{weierstrass\_fun } (f z)) \text{ holomorphic\_on } A$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma weierstrass\_fun\_analytic:** " $\wp$  analytic\_on  $-\Lambda$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma weierstrass\_fun\_analytic' [analytic\_intros]:**  
**assumes** "f analytic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $(\lambda z. \wp (f z)) \text{ analytic\_on } A$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma weierstrass\_fun\_continuous\_on:** "continuous\_on  $(-\Lambda)$  weierstrass\_fun"  
 <proof>

**lemma weierstrass\_fun\_continuous\_on' [continuous\_intros]:**  
**assumes** "continuous\_on A f" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** "continuous\_on A  $(\lambda z. \wp (f z))$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma tendsto\_weierstrass\_fun [tendsto\_intros]:**  
**assumes** " $(f \longrightarrow c) F$ " " $c \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $((\lambda z. \wp (f z)) \longrightarrow \wp c) F$ "  
 <proof>

**lemma deriv\_weierstrass\_fun:**  
**assumes** " $z \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\text{deriv } \wp z = \wp' z$ "  
 <proof>

The following identity is to be read with care: for  $\omega = 0$  we get a division by zero, so the term  $1 / \omega^2$  simply gets dropped.

**lemma weierstrass\_fun\_eq:**  
**assumes** " $z \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\wp z = (\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda} (1 / (z - \omega)^2) - 1 / \omega^2)$ "  
 <proof>

### 6.3 Ellipticity and poles

It can easily be seen from its definition that  $\wp$  is an even elliptic function with a double pole at each lattice point and no other poles. Thus it has order 2.

Its derivative is consequently an odd elliptic function with a triple pole at each lattice point, no other poles, and order 3.

The results in this section correspond to Apostol's Theorems 1.9 and 1.10.

**lemma weierstrass\_fun\_minus:** " $\wp (-z) = \wp z$ "  
 <proof>

**sublocale** *weierstrass\_fun*: *complex\_lattice\_periodic*  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $\wp$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *zorder\_weierstrass\_fun\_pole*:

**assumes** " $\omega \in \Lambda$ "  
  **shows** "*zorder*  $\wp$   $\omega = -2$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma** *is\_pole\_weierstrass\_fun*:

**assumes**  $\omega$ : " $\omega \in \Lambda$ "  
  **shows** "*is\_pole*  $\wp$   $\omega$ "

*<proof>*

**sublocale** *weierstrass\_fun*: *nicely\_elliptic\_function*  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $\wp$

*<proof>*

**sublocale** *weierstrass\_fun*: *even\_elliptic\_function*  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $\wp$

*<proof>*

**lemmas** [*elliptic\_function\_intros*] =

*weierstrass\_fun.elliptic\_function\_axioms*  
  *weierstrass\_fun.nicely\_elliptic\_function\_axioms*

**lemma** *is\_pole\_weierstrass\_fun\_iff*: "*is\_pole*  $\wp$   $z \iff z \in \Lambda$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma** *is\_pole\_weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_iff*: "*is\_pole*  $\wp'$   $z \iff z \in \Lambda$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma** *zorder\_weierstrass\_fun\_deriv\_pole*:

**assumes** " $z \in \Lambda$ "  
  **shows** "*zorder*  $\wp'$   $z = -3$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma** *order\_weierstrass\_fun [simp]*: "*elliptic\_order*  $\wp = 2$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma** *order\_weierstrass\_fun\_deriv [simp]*: "*elliptic\_order*  $\wp' = 3$ "

*<proof>*

**sublocale** *weierstrass\_fun*: *nonconst\_nicely\_elliptic\_function*  $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$   $\wp$

*<proof>*

**sublocale** *weierstrass\_fun\_deriv*: *nonconst\_nicely\_elliptic\_function*  $\omega_1$   
 $\omega_2$  " $\wp'$ "

*<proof>*

## 6.4 The numbers $e_1, e_2, e_3$

The values of  $\wp$  at the half-periods  $\frac{1}{2}\omega_1$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}\omega_2$ , and  $\frac{1}{2}(\omega_1 + \omega_2)$  are exactly the roots of the polynomial  $4X^3 - g_2X - g_3$ .

We call these values  $e_1, e_2, e_3$ .

**definition** *number\_e1*:: "complex" ("e<sub>1</sub>") where  
 $e_1 \equiv \wp (\omega_1 / 2)$ "

**definition** *number\_e2*:: "complex" ("e<sub>2</sub>") where  
 $e_2 \equiv \wp (\omega_2 / 2)$ "

**definition** *number\_e3*:: "complex" ("e<sub>3</sub>") where  
 $e_3 \equiv \wp ((\omega_1 + \omega_2) / 2)$ "

**lemmas** *number\_e123\_defs* = *number\_e1\_def* *number\_e2\_def* *number\_e3\_def*

The half-lattice points are those that are equivalent to one of the three points  $\frac{\omega_1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{\omega_2}{2}$ , and  $\frac{\omega_1 + \omega_2}{2}$ .

**lemma** *to\_fund\_parallelogram\_half\_period*:  
**assumes** " $\omega \notin \Lambda$ " " $2 * \omega \in \Lambda$ "  
**shows** "*to\_fund\_parallelogram*  $\omega \in \{\omega_1 / 2, \omega_2 / 2, (\omega_1 + \omega_2) / 2\}$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *rel\_half\_period*:  
**assumes** " $\omega \notin \Lambda$ " " $2 * \omega \in \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\exists \omega' \in \{\omega_1 / 2, \omega_2 / 2, (\omega_1 + \omega_2) / 2\}. \text{rel } \omega \ \omega'$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstass\_fun\_deriv\_half\_period\_eq\_0*:  
**assumes** " $\omega \in \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\wp' (\omega / 2) = 0$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstass\_fun\_deriv\_half\_root\_eq\_0 [simp]*:  
 $\wp' (\omega_1 / 2) = 0$  " $\wp' (\omega_2 / 2) = 0$ " " $\wp' ((\omega_1 + \omega_2) / 2) = 0$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_at\_half\_period*:  
**assumes** " $\omega \in \Lambda$ " " $\omega / 2 \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\wp (\omega / 2) \in \{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_at\_half\_period'*:  
**assumes** " $2 * \omega \in \Lambda$ " " $\omega \notin \Lambda$ "  
**shows** " $\wp \ \omega \in \{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$ "  
*<proof>*

$\wp'$  has a simple zero at each half-lattice point, and no other zeros.

```

lemma weierstrass_fun_deriv_eq_0_iff:
  assumes "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "ϕ' z = 0 ⟷ 2 * z ∈ Λ"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma zorder_weierstrass_fun_deriv_zero:
  assumes "z ∉ Λ" "2 * z ∈ Λ"
  shows "zorder ϕ' z = 1"
⟨proof⟩

```

end

## 6.5 Injectivity of $\wp$

```

context complex_lattice
begin

```

The function  $\wp$  is almost injective in the sense that  $\wp(u) = \wp(v)$  iff  $u \sim v$  or  $u \sim -v$ . Another way to phrase this is that it is injective inside period half-parallelograms.

This is Exercise 1.3(a) in Apostol's book.

```

theorem weierstrass_fun_eq_iff:
  assumes "u ∉ Λ" "v ∉ Λ"
  shows "ϕ u = ϕ v ⟷ rel u v ∨ rel u (-v)"
⟨proof⟩

```

It is also surjective. Together with the fact that it is doubly periodic and even, this means that it takes on every value exactly once inside its period triangles, or twice within its period parallelograms. Note however that the multiplicities of the poles on the lattice points and of the values  $e_1, e_2, e_3$  at the half-lattice points are 2.

```

lemma surj_weierstrass_fun:
  obtains z where "z ∈ period_parallelogram w - Λ" "ϕ z = c"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma surj_weierstrass_fun_deriv:
  obtains z where "z ∈ period_parallelogram w - Λ" "ϕ' z = c"
⟨proof⟩

```

end

```

context complex_lattice_swap
begin

```

```

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_swap [simp]: "swap.weierstrass_fun_aux = weierstrass_fun_aux"
⟨proof⟩

```

```
lemma weierstrass_fun_swap [simp]: "swap.weierstrass_fun = weierstrass_fun"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma number_e1_swap [simp]: "swap.number_e1 = number_e2"
  and number_e2_swap [simp]: "swap.number_e2 = number_e1"
  and number_e3_swap [simp]: "swap.number_e3 = number_e3"
  <proof>
```

```
end
```

## 6.6 Invariance under lattice transformations

We show how various concepts related to lattices (e.g. the Weierstraß  $\wp$  function, the numbers  $e_1, e_2, e_3$ ) transform under various transformations of the lattice. Namely: complex conjugation, swapping the generators, stretching/rotation, and unimodular Möbius transforms.

```
locale complex_lattice_cnj = complex_lattice
begin
```

```
sublocale cnj: complex_lattice "cnj  $\omega_1$ " "cnj  $\omega_2$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma bij_betw_lattice_cnj: "bij_betw cnj lattice cnj.lattice"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma bij_betw_lattice0_cnj: "bij_betw cnj lattice0 cnj.lattice0"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma lattice_cnj_eq: "cnj.lattice = cnj ` lattice"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma lattice0_cnj_eq: "cnj.lattice0 = cnj ` lattice0"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_cnj: "cnj.eisenstein_fun_aux n z = cnj (eisenstein_fun_aux
n (cnj z))"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_cnj: "cnj.weierstrass_fun_aux z = cnj (weierstrass_fun_aux
(cnj z))"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma weierstrass_fun_cnj: "cnj.weierstrass_fun z = cnj (weierstrass_fun
(cnj z))"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma number_e1_cnj [simp]: "cnj.number_e1 = cnj number_e1"
  and number_e2_cnj [simp]: "cnj.number_e2 = cnj number_e2"
```

```

    and number_e3_cnj [simp]: "cnj.number_e3 = cnj number_e3"
    <proof>

```

```

end

```

```

locale complex_lattice_stretch = complex_lattice +
  fixes c :: complex
  assumes stretch_nonzero: "c ≠ 0"
begin

```

```

sublocale stretched: complex_lattice "c * ω1" "c * ω2"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma stretched_of_ω12_coords: "stretched.of_ω12_coords ab = c * of_ω12_coords
ab"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma stretched_ω12_coords: "stretched.ω12_coords ab = ω12_coords (ab
/ c)"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma stretched_ω1_coord: "stretched.ω1_coord ab = ω1_coord (ab / c)"
  and stretched_ω2_coord: "stretched.ω2_coord ab = ω2_coord (ab / c)"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma mult_into_stretched_lattice: "(*) c ∈ Λ → stretched.lattice"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma mult_into_stretched_lattice': "(*) (inverse c) ∈ stretched.lattice
→ Λ"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma bij_betw_stretch_lattice: "bij_betw ((* c) lattice stretched.lattice"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma bij_betw_stretch_lattice0:
  "bij_betw ((* c) lattice0 stretched.lattice0"
  <proof>

```

```

end

```

```

locale unimodular_moebius_transform_lattice = complex_lattice + unimodular_moebius_transform
begin

```

```

definition ω1' where "ω1' = of_int c * ω2 + of_int d * ω1"
definition ω2' where "ω2' = of_int a * ω2 + of_int b * ω1"

```

```

sublocale transformed: complex_lattice  $\omega_1'$   $\omega_2'$ 
  <proof>

lemma transformed_lattice_subset: "transformed.lattice  $\subseteq$  lattice"
  <proof>

lemma transformed_lattice_eq: "transformed.lattice = lattice"
  <proof>

lemma transformed_lattice0_eq: "transformed.lattice0 = lattice0"
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_transformed [simp]: "transformed.eisenstein_fun_aux
= eisenstein_fun_aux"
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_aux_transformed [simp]: "transformed.weierstrass_fun_aux
= weierstrass_fun_aux"
  <proof>

lemma weierstrass_fun_transformed [simp]: "transformed.weierstrass_fun
= weierstrass_fun"
  <proof>

end

locale complex_lattice_apply_modgrp = complex_lattice +
  fixes f :: modgrp
begin

sublocale unimodular_moebius_transform_lattice
   $\omega_1$   $\omega_2$  "modgrp_a f" "modgrp_b f" "modgrp_c f" "modgrp_d f"
  rewrites "modgrp.as_modgrp = ( $\lambda x. x$ )" and "modgrp. $\varphi$  = apply_modgrp"
  <proof>

end

```

## 6.7 Construction of arbitrary elliptic functions from $\wp$

In this section we will show that any elliptic function can be written as a combination of  $\wp$  and  $\wp'$ . The key step is to show that every even elliptic function can be written as a rational function of  $\wp$ .

The first step is to show that if  $w \notin \Lambda$ , the function  $f(z) = \wp(z) - \wp(w)$  has a double zero at  $w$  if  $w$  is a half-lattice point and simple zeros at  $\pm w$  otherwise, and no other zeros.

```

locale weierstrass_fun_minus_const = complex_lattice +
  fixes w :: complex and f :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex"

```

```

    assumes not_in_lattice: "w ∉ Λ"
    defines "f ≡ (λz. ϕ z - ϕ w)"
begin

sublocale elliptic_function_affine ω1 ω2 ϕ 1 "-ϕ w" f
  ⟨proof⟩

lemmas order_eq = order_affine_eq
lemmas is_pole_iff = is_pole_affine_iff
lemmas zorder_pole_eq = zorder_pole_affine

lemma isolated_zero_iff: "isolated_zero f z ↔ rel z w ∨ rel z (-w)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_zero_eq:
  assumes "rel z w ∨ rel z (-w)"
  shows "zorder f z = (if 2 * w ∈ Λ then 2 else 1)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_zero_eq':
  assumes "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "zorder f z = (if rel z w ∨ rel z (-w) then if 2 * w ∈ Λ then
2 else 1 else 0)"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

lemma (in complex_lattice) zorder_weierstrass_fun_minus_const:
  assumes "w ∉ Λ" "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "zorder (λz. ϕ z - ϕ w) z =
    (if rel z w ∨ rel z (-w) then if 2 * w ∈ Λ then 2 else 1
else 0)"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

We now construct an elliptic function

$$g(z) = \prod_{w \in A} (\wp(z) - \wp(w))^{h(w)}$$

where  $A \subseteq \mathbb{C} \setminus \Lambda$  is finite and  $h : A \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ .

We will examine what the zeros and poles of this functions are and what their multiplicities are.

This is roughly Exercise 1.3(b) in Apostol's book.

```

locale elliptic_function_construct = complex_lattice +
  fixes A :: "complex set" and h :: "complex ⇒ int" and g :: "complex
⇒ complex"
  assumes finite [intro]: "finite A" and no_lattice_points: "A ∩ Λ =
{}"

```

```

defines "g ≡ (λz. (∏ w∈A. (φ z - φ w) powi h w))"
begin

sublocale elliptic_function ω1 ω2 g
  ⟨proof⟩

sublocale even_elliptic_function ω1 ω2 g
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma no_lattice_points': "w ∉ Λ" if "w ∈ A" for w
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma eq_0_iff: "g z = 0 ⟷ (∃ w∈A. h w ≠ 0 ∧ (rel z w ∨ rel z (-w)))"
if "z ∉ Λ" for z
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma nonzero_almost_everywhere: "eventually (λz. g z ≠ 0) (cosparse UNIV)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma eventually_nonzero_at: "eventually (λz. g z ≠ 0) (at z)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma zorder_eq:
  assumes z: "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "zorder g z =
    (∑ w∈A. if rel z w ∨ rel z (-w) then if 2*w ∈ Λ then 2
    * h w else h w else 0)"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

lemma (in even_elliptic_function) in_terms_of_weierstrass_fun_even_aux:
  assumes nontrivial: "¬eventually (λz. f z = 0) (cosparse UNIV)"
  defines "Z ≡ {z∈half_fund_parallelogram - {0}. is_pole f z ∨ isolated_zero f z}"
  defines "h ≡ (λz. if z ∈ Z then zorder f z div (if 2 * z ∈ Λ then 2 else 1) else 0)"
  obtains c where "eventually (λz. f z = c * (∏ w∈Z. (φ z - φ w) powi h w)) (cosparse UNIV)"
  ⟨proof⟩

Finally, we show that any even elliptic function can be written as a rational function of φ. This is Exercise 1.4 in Apostol's book.

lemma (in even_elliptic_function) in_terms_of_weierstrass_fun_even:
  obtains p q ∴ "complex poly" where "q ≠ 0" "∀ z. f z = poly p (φ z) / poly q (φ z)"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

From this, we now show that any elliptic function  $f$  can be written in the form  $f(z) = g(\wp(z)) + \wp'(z)h(\wp(z))$  where  $g, h$  are rational functions.

The proof is fairly simple: We can split  $f(z)$  into a sum  $f(z) = f_1(z) + f_2(z)$  where  $f_1$  is even and  $f_2$  is odd by defining  $f_1(z) = \frac{1}{2}(f(z) + f(-z))$  and  $f_2(z) = \frac{1}{2}(f(z) - f(-z))$ . We can then further define  $f_3(z) = f_2(z)/\wp'(z)$  so that  $f_3$  is also even.

By our previous result, we know that  $f_1$  and  $f_3$  can be written as rational functions of  $\wp$ , so by combining everything we get the result we want.

This result is Exercise 1.5 in Apostol's book.

```

theorem (in even_elliptic_function) in_terms_of_weierstrass_fun:
  obtains p q r s :: "complex poly" where "q ≠ 0" "s ≠ 0"
    "∀ z. f z = poly p (wp z) / poly q (wp z) + wp' z * poly r (wp z) /
poly s (wp z)"
  <proof>

```

**end**

## 7 Eisenstein series and the differential equations of $\wp$

```

theory Eisenstein_Series

```

```

imports

```

```

  Weierstrass_Elliptic

```

```

  Z_Plane_Q_Disc

```

```

  "Polynomial_Factorization.Fundamental_Theorem_Algebra_Factorized"

```

```

  "Zeta_Function.Zeta_Function"

```

```

  "Polylog.Polylog"

```

```

  "Lambert_Series.Lambert_Series"

```

```

  "Cotangent_PFD_Formula.Cotangent_PFD_Formula"

```

```

  "Algebraic_Numbers.Bivariate_Polynomials"

```

```

begin

```

```

lemmas [simp del] = div_mult_self1 div_mult_self2 div_mult_self3 div_mult_self4

```

We define the Eisenstein series  $G_n$ , which is the sequence of coefficients of the Laurent series expansion of  $\wp$ . Both  $\wp$  and  $G_n$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ) are invariants of the lattice, i.e. they are independent from the choice of generators.

### 7.1 Definition

For  $n \geq 3$ , the Eisenstein series  $G_n$  is defined simply as the absolutely convergent sum  $\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda^*} \omega^{-n}$ . However, we want to stay as general as possible here and therefore define it in such a way that the definition also works for

$n = 2$ , where the sum is only conditionally convergent and much less well-behaved.

Note that all the Eisenstein series with odd  $n \geq 3$  vanish due to the symmetry in the sum. As for  $n < 3$ , we define  $G_1 = 0$  in agreement with the the values for other odd  $n$  and  $G_0 = 1$  since this makes some later theorem statements regarding modular forms more elegant.

```
context complex_lattice
begin
```

```
definition eisenstein_series :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where
  "eisenstein_series k = (if k = 0 then 1 else if odd k then 0 else
    2 /  $\omega$ 1 ^ k * zeta (of_nat k) + ( $\sum_{\infty n \in -\{0\}}$ .  $\sum_{\infty m}$ . 1 / of_omega12_coords
    (of_int m, of_int n) ^ k))"
```

```
notation eisenstein_series ("G")
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_0 [simp]: "eisenstein_series 0 = 1"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_odd_eq_0 [simp]: "odd k  $\implies$  eisenstein_series
k = 0"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_Suc_0 [simp]: "eisenstein_series (Suc 0) = 0"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_norm_summable:
  assumes "n  $\geq$  3"
  shows "( $\lambda \omega$ . 1 / norm  $\omega$  ^ n) summable_on  $\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_summable:
  assumes "n  $\geq$  3"
  shows "( $\lambda \omega$ . 1 /  $\omega$  ^ n) summable_on  $\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_has_sum:
  assumes "k  $\geq$  3"
  shows "( $\lambda \omega$ . 1 /  $\omega$  ^ k) has_sum eisenstein_series k  $\Lambda^*$ "
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_altdef:
  assumes "k  $\geq$  3"
  shows "eisenstein_series k = ( $\sum_{\infty \omega \in \Lambda^*}$ . 1 /  $\omega$  ^ k)"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma eisenstein_fun_aux_0 [simp]:
  assumes "n  $\neq$  2"
```

**shows** "eisenstein\_fun\_aux n 0 = eisenstein\_series n"  
 ⟨proof⟩

## 7.2 The Laurent series expansion of $\wp$ at the origin

**lemma** *higher\_deriv\_weierstrass\_fun\_aux\_0*:  
**assumes** "m > 0"  
**shows** "(deriv ^^ m) weierstrass\_fun\_aux 0 = (- 1) ^ m \* fact (Suc m) \* G (m + 2)"  
 ⟨proof⟩

We now show that the Laurent series expansion of  $\wp(z)$  at  $z = 0$  has the form

$$z^{-2} + \sum_{n \geq 1} (n+1)G_{n+2}z^n .$$

We choose a different approach to prove this than Apostol: Apostol converts the sum in question into a double sum and then interchanges the order of summation, claiming the double sum to be absolutely convergent. Since we were unable to see why that sum should be absolutely convergent, we were unable to replicate his argument. In any case, arguing about absolute convergence of double sums is always messy.

Our approach instead simply uses the fact that *weierstrass\_fun\_aux* (the Weierstrass function with its double pole removed) is analytic at 0 and thus has a power series expansion that is valid within any ball around 0 that does not contain any lattice points.

The coefficients of this power series expansion can be determined simply by taking the  $n$ -th derivative of *weierstrass\_fun\_aux* at 0, which is easy to do. Note that this series converges absolutely in this domain, since it is a power series, but we do not show this here.

**definition** *fps\_weierstrass* :: "complex fps"  
**where** "fps\_weierstrass = Abs\_fps ( $\lambda n$ . if n = 0 then 0 else of\_nat (Suc n) \* G (n + 2))"

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_aux\_fps\_expansion*: "weierstrass\_fun\_aux has\_fps\_expansion fps\_weierstrass"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *fls\_weierstrass* :: "complex fls"  
**where** "fls\_weierstrass = fls\_X\_intpow (-2) + fps\_to\_fls fps\_weierstrass"

**lemma** *fls\_subdegree\_weierstrass*: "fls\_subdegree fls\_weierstrass = -2"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *fls\_weierstrass\_nz [simp]*: "fls\_weierstrass  $\neq$  0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

The following corresponds to Theorem 1.11 in Apostol's book.

```
theorem fls_weierstrass_laurent_expansion [laurent_expansion_intros]:
  "φ has_laurent_expansion fls_weierstrass"
⟨proof⟩
```

```
corollary fls_weierstrass_deriv_laurent_expansion [laurent_expansion_intros]:
  "φ' has_laurent_expansion fls_deriv fls_weierstrass"
⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma fls_nth_weierstrass:
  "fls_nth fls_weierstrass n =
    (if n = -2 then 1 else if n > 0 then of_int (n + 1) * G (nat n +
2) else 0)"
⟨proof⟩
```

### 7.3 Differential equations for $\wp$

Using our results on elliptic functions, we can prove the important result that  $\wp$  satisfies the ordinary differential equation

$$\wp'^2 = 4\wp^3 - 60G_4\wp - 140G_6 .$$

The proof works by simply subtracting the two sides and then looking at the Laurent series expansion, noting that the poles all cancel out. This means that what remains is an elliptic functions without poles and therefore constant.

The constant can then easily be determined, since it is the 0-th coefficient of said Laurent series.

This is Theorem 1.12 in Apostol's book.

```
theorem weierstrass_fun_ODE1:
  assumes "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "φ' z ^ 2 = 4 * φ z ^ 3 - 60 * G 4 * φ z - 140 * G 6"
⟨proof⟩
```

The above ODE of the meromorphic function  $\wp$  can now easily be lifted to a formal ODE on the corresponding Laurent series.

```
lemma fls_weierstrass_ODE1:
  defines "P ≡ fls_weierstrass"
  shows "fls_deriv P ^ 2 = 4 * P ^ 3 - fls_const (60 * G 4) * P - fls_const
(140 * G 6)"
  (is "?lhs = ?rhs")
⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma fls_weierstrass_ODE2:
  defines "P ≡ fls_weierstrass"
  shows "fls_deriv (fls_deriv P) = 6 * P ^ 2 - fls_const (30 * G 4)"
⟨proof⟩
```

```

theorem weierstrass_fun_ODE2:
  assumes "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "deriv ϕ' z = 6 * ϕ z ^ 2 - 30 * G 4"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma has_field_derivative_weierstrass_fun_deriv [derivative_intros]:
  assumes "(f has_field_derivative f') (at z within A)" "f z ∉ Λ"
  shows "((λz. ϕ' (f z)) has_field_derivative ((6 * ϕ (f z) ^ 2 - 30 * G 4) * f')) (at z within A)"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

## 7.4 Lattice invariants and a recurrence for the Eisenstein series

We will see that  $G_n$  can always be expressed in terms of  $G_4$  and  $G_6$ . These values, up to a constant factor, are referred to as  $g_2$  and  $g_3$ .

```

definition invariant_g2:: "complex" ("g2") where
  "g2 ≡ 60 * eisenstein_series 4"

```

```

definition invariant_g3:: "complex" ("g3") where
  "g3 ≡ 140 * eisenstein_series 6"

```

```

lemma weierstrass_fun_ODE1':
  assumes "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "ϕ' z ^ 2 = 4 * ϕ z ^ 3 - g2 * ϕ z - g3"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

This is the ODE obtained by differentiating the first ODE.

```

theorem weierstrass_fun_ODE2':
  assumes "z ∉ Λ"
  shows "deriv ϕ' z = 6 * ϕ z ^ 2 - g2 / 2"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma half_period_weierstrass_fun_is_root:
  assumes "ω ∈ Λ" "ω / 2 ∉ Λ"
  defines "z ≡ ϕ (ω / 2)"
  shows "4 * z ^ 3 - g2 * z - g3 = 0"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

The discriminant of the depressed cubic polynomial  $p(x) = cX^3 + aX + b$  is  $-4a^3 - 27cb^2$ . This is useful since it gives us an algebraic condition for whether  $p$  has distinct roots.

```

lemma (in -) depressed_cubic_discriminant:
  fixes a b :: "'a :: idom"
  assumes "[b, a, 0, c] = Polynomial.smult c ([:-x1, 1:] * [:-x2, 1:] * [:-x3, 1:])"

```

**shows** "c ^ 3 \* (x1 - x2)^2 \* (x1 - x3)^2 \* (x2 - x3)^2 = -4 \* a ^ 3 - 27 \* c \* b ^ 2"  
 ⟨proof⟩

The numbers  $e_1, e_2, e_3$  are all distinct and hence the discriminant  $\Delta = g_2^3 - 27g_3^2$  does not vanish. This is the first part of Apostol's Theorem 1.14.

**theorem distinct\_e123:** "distinct [e1, e2, e3]"  
 ⟨proof⟩

The above implies that the polynomial

$$4(X - e_1)(X - e_2)(X - e_3) = 4X^3 - g_2X - g_3$$

has three distinct roots and therefore its discriminant

$$\Delta = g_2^3 - 27g_3^2$$

is non-zero. This is the second part of Apostol's Theorem 1.14.

From now on, we will refer to  $\Delta$  as the discriminant of our lattice  $\Lambda$ . We also introduce the related invariant  $j = \frac{g_2^3}{\Delta}$ .

**definition discr :: complex where**  
 "discr = g2 ^ 3 - 27 \* g3 ^ 2"

**definition invariant\_j :: complex where**  
 "invariant\_j = g2 ^ 3 / discr"

**theorem**  
 fixes z :: "complex"  
 defines "P ≡ [:-g3, -g2, 0, 4:]"  
 shows discr\_nonzero\_aux1: "P = 4 \* [:-e1, 1:] \* [:-e2, 1:] \* [:-e3, 1:]"  
 and discr\_nonzero\_aux2: "4 \* (ϕ z)^3 - g2 \* (ϕ z) - g3 = 4 \* (ϕ z - e1) \* (ϕ z - e2) \* (ϕ z - e3)"  
 and discr\_nonzero: "discr ≠ 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**end**

**context std\_complex\_lattice**  
**begin**

**lemma eisenstein\_series\_norm\_summable':**  
 "k ≥ 3 ⇒ (λ(m,n). norm (1 / (of\_int m + of\_int n \* τ) ^ k)) summable\_on (-{(0,0)})"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma eisenstein\_series\_2\_altdef:**

```
"eisenstein_series 2 = 2 * zeta 2 + (∑∞ n ∈ -{0}. ∑∞ m. 1 / (of_int m + of_int n * τ) ^ 2)"
⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_altdef':
  "k ≥ 3 ⇒ eisenstein_series k = (∑∞ (m,n) ∈ -{(0,0)}. 1 / (of_int m + of_int n * τ) ^ k)"
  ⟨proof⟩
```

end

## 7.5 Fourier expansion

In this section we derive the Fourier expansion of the Eisenstein series, following Apostol's Theorem 1.18, but with some alterations. For example, we directly generalise the result in the spirit of Apostol's Exercise 1.11, and we make use of the existing formalisation of Lambert series.

We first define an auxiliary function

$$f_n(z) = \sum_{m \in \mathbb{Z}} (z + m)^{-n} = \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \psi^{(n-1)}(1+z) + \psi^{(n-1)}(1-z) + \frac{1}{z^n}$$

where  $\psi^{(n)}$  denotes the Polygamma function. This is well-defined for  $n \geq 2$  and  $z \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{Z}$ .

We then prove the Fourier expansion

$$f_{n+1}(z) = \frac{(2i\pi)^{n+1}}{n!} \text{Li}_{-n}(q)$$

where  $q = e^{2i\pi z}$  and  $\text{Li}_{-n}$  denotes the Polylogarithm function.

```
definition eisenstein_fourier_aux :: "nat ⇒ complex ⇒ complex" where
  "eisenstein_fourier_aux n z =
    (Polygamma (n-1) (1 + z) + Polygamma (n-1) (1 - z)) / fact (n - 1)
  + 1 / z ^ n"
```

```
lemma abs_summable_one_over_const_plus_nat_power:
  assumes "n ≥ 2"
  shows "summable (λk. norm (1 / (z + of_nat k :: complex) ^ n))"
  ⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma abs_summable_one_over_const_minus_nat_power:
  assumes "n ≥ 2"
  shows "summable (λk. norm (1 / (z - of_nat k :: complex) ^ n))"
  ⟨proof⟩
```

```
lemma has_sum_eisenstein_fourier_aux:
  assumes "n ≥ 2" and "even n" and "Im z > 0"
```

shows " $(\lambda m. 1 / (z + \text{of\_int } m) ^ n)$  has\_sum eisenstein\_fourier\_aux n z) UNIV"  
 <proof>

lemma eisenstein\_fourier\_aux\_expansion:  
 assumes n: "odd n" and z: "Im z > 0"  
 shows "eisenstein\_fourier\_aux (n + 1) z =  
 (2 \* i \* pi) ^ Suc n / fact n \* polylog (-int n) (to\_q 1 z)"  
 <proof>

With this, we can now express the Fourier expansion of the Eisenstein series of the lattice  $\Lambda(1, \tau)$  with  $\text{Im}(\tau) > 0$  in terms of a Lambert series:

$$G_k = 2(\zeta(k) + \frac{(2i\pi)^k}{(k-1)!} L(n^{k-1}, q))$$

Here, as usual,  $q = e^{2i\pi\tau}$  and

$$L(n^{k-1}, q) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{k-1} \frac{q^n}{1 - q^n} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \sigma_{k-1}(n) q^n$$

lemma (in std\_complex\_lattice) eisenstein\_series\_conv\_lambert:  
 assumes k: "k ≥ 2" "even k"  
 defines "x ≡ to\_q 1 τ"  
 shows "eisenstein\_series k =  
 2 \* (zeta k + (2 \* i \* pi) ^ k / fact (k - 1) \* lambert (λn.  
 of\_nat n ^ (k-1)) x)"  
 <proof>

## 7.6 Behaviour under lattice transformations

In this section, we will show how the Eisenstein series and related lattice properties behave under various lattice operations such as unimodular transformations and stretching.

In particular, we will see that the invariant  $j$  is actually invariant under unimodular transformations and stretching. This is Apostol's Theorem 1.16.

context complex\_lattice\_swap  
 begin

lemma eisenstein\_series\_swap [simp]:  
 assumes "k ≠ 2"  
 shows "swap.eisenstein\_series k = eisenstein\_series k"  
 <proof>

lemma eisenstein\_fun\_aux\_swap [simp]: "swap.eisenstein\_fun\_aux = eisenstein\_fun\_aux"  
 <proof>

```

lemma invariant_g2_swap [simp]: "swap.invariant_g2 = invariant_g2"
  and invariant_g3_swap [simp]: "swap.invariant_g3 = invariant_g3"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma discr_swap [simp]: "swap.discr = discr"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma invariant_j_swap [simp]: "swap.invariant_j = invariant_j"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

context complex_lattice_cnj
begin

lemma eisenstein_series_cnj [simp]: "cnj.eisenstein_series n = cnj (eisenstein_series
n)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma invariant_g2_cnj [simp]: "cnj.invariant_g2 = cnj invariant_g2"
  and invariant_g3_cnj [simp]: "cnj.invariant_g3 = cnj invariant_g3"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma discr_cnj [simp]: "cnj.discr = cnj discr"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma invariant_j_cnj [simp]: "cnj.invariant_j = cnj invariant_j"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

context complex_lattice_stretch
begin

lemma eisenstein_series_stretch:
  "stretched.eisenstein_series n = c powi (-n) * eisenstein_series n"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma invariant_g2_stretch [simp]: "stretched.invariant_g2 = invariant_g2
/ c ^ 4"
  and invariant_g3_stretch [simp]: "stretched.invariant_g3 = invariant_g3
/ c ^ 6"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma discr_stretch [simp]: "stretched.discr = discr / c ^ 12"
  ⟨proof⟩

```

```
lemma invariant_j_stretch [simp]: "stretched.invariant_j = invariant_j"
  <proof>
```

```
end
```

```
context unimodular_moebius_transform_lattice
begin
```

```
lemma eisenstein_series_transformed [simp]:
  assumes "k ≠ 2"
  shows "transformed.eisenstein_series k = eisenstein_series k"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma invariant_g2_transformed [simp]: "transformed.invariant_g2 = invariant_g2"
  and invariant_g3_transformed [simp]: "transformed.invariant_g3 = invariant_g3"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma discr_transformed [simp]: "transformed.discr = discr"
  <proof>
```

```
lemma invariant_j_transformed [simp]: "transformed.invariant_j = invariant_j"
  <proof>
```

```
end
```

## 7.7 Recurrence relation

```
context complex_lattice
begin
```

Using our formal ODE from above, we find the following recurrence for  $G_n$ . By unfolding this repeatedly, we can write any  $G_n$  as a polynomial in  $G_4$  and  $G_6$  – or, equivalently, in  $g_2$  and  $g_3$ .

This is Theorem 1.13 in Apostol's book.

```
lemma eisenstein_series_recurrence_aux:
  defines "b ≡ λn. (2*n + 1) * (G (2*n + 2))"
  shows "b 1 = g2 / 20"
  and "b 2 = g3 / 28"
  and "∧n. n ≥ 3 ⇒ (2 * of_nat n + 3) * (of_nat n - 2) * b n = 3
  * (∑ i=1..n-2. b i * b (n - i - 1))"
  <proof>
```

```
theorem eisenstein_series_recurrence:
  assumes "n ≥ 2"
  shows "G (2*n+4) = 3 / of_nat ((2*n+5) * (n-1) * (2*n+3)) *
  (∑ i≤n-2. of_nat ((2*i+3) * (2*(n-i)-1)) * G (2*i+4) * G (2*(n-2-i)+4))"
  <proof>
```

**end**

With this we can now write some code to compute representations of  $G_n$  in terms of  $G_4$  and  $G_6$ . Our code returns a bivariate polynomial with rational coefficients.

```

fun eisenstein_series_poly :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  rat poly poly" where
  "eisenstein_series_poly n =
    (if n = 0 then [: [:0, 1:] :]
     else if n = 1 then [:0, 1:]
     else
       Polynomial.smult [:3 / of_nat ((2*n+5) * (n-1) * (2*n+3)):]
         ( $\sum_{i \leq n-2}$ . Polynomial.smult (of_nat ((2*i+3)*(2*(n-i)-1)))
           (eisenstein_series_poly i * eisenstein_series_poly (n-2-i))))"

lemmas [simp del] = eisenstein_series_poly.simps

lemma eisenstein_series_poly_0 [simp]: "eisenstein_series_poly 0 = [:
[:0, 1:] :]"
  and eisenstein_series_poly_1 [simp]: "eisenstein_series_poly (Suc 0)
= [:0, 1:]"
  and eisenstein_series_poly_rec:
    "n  $\geq$  2  $\implies$  eisenstein_series_poly n =
      Polynomial.smult [:3 / of_nat ((2*n+5) * (n-1) * (2*n+3)):]
        ( $\sum_{i \leq n-2}$ . Polynomial.smult (of_nat ((2*i+3)*(2*(n-i)-1)))
          (eisenstein_series_poly i * eisenstein_series_poly (n-2-i)))"
    <proof>

context complex_lattice
begin

lemma eisenstein_series_poly_correct:
  "poly2 (map_poly2 of_rat (eisenstein_series_poly n)) (G 4) (G 6) = G
(2 * n + 4)"
  <proof>

end

```

We employ memoisation for better performance:

```

definition eisenstein_polys_step :: "rat poly poly list  $\Rightarrow$  rat poly poly
list" where
  "eisenstein_polys_step ps =
    (let n = length ps
     in ps @ [Polynomial.smult [:3 / of_nat ((2*n+5) * (n-1) * (2*n+3)):]
      ( $\sum_{i \leq n-2}$ . Polynomial.smult (of_nat ((2*i+3)*(2*(n-i)-1)))
        (ps ! i * ps ! (n-2-i)))]])"

definition eisenstein_series_polys :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  rat poly poly list" where

```

```

    "eisenstein_series_polys n = (eisenstein_polys_step ^^ (n - 2)) [[:0, 1:] :], [[:0, 1:]]"

lemma eisenstein_polys_step_correct:
  assumes n: "n ≥ 2" and ps_eq: "ps = map eisenstein_series_poly [0..<n]"
  shows "eisenstein_polys_step ps = map eisenstein_series_poly [0..<Suc n]"
  <proof>

lemma eisenstein_series_polys_correct:
  "eisenstein_series_polys n = map eisenstein_series_poly [0..<max 2 n]"
  <proof>

lemma funpow_rec_right: "n > 0 ⇒ (f ^^ n) xs = (f ^^ (n-1)) (f xs)"
  <proof>

context complex_lattice
begin

lemma eisenstein_series_polys_correct':
  assumes "eisenstein_series_polys m = ps"
  shows "list_all (λi. G (2*i+4) = poly2 (map_poly2 of_rat (ps ! i)))
  (G 4) (G 6) [0..<m]"
  <proof>

```

We now compute the relations up to  $G_{20}$  for demonstration purposes. This could in principle be turned into a proof method as well.

```

lemma eisenstein_series_relations:
  "G 8 = 3 / 7 * G 4 ^ 2" (is ?th8)
  "G 10 = 5 / 11 * G 4 * G 6" (is ?th10)
  "G 12 = 18 / 143 * G 4 ^ 3 + 25 / 143 * G 6 ^ 2" (is ?th12)
  "G 14 = 30 / 143 * G 4 ^ 2 * G 6" (is ?th14)
  "G 16 = 27225 / 668525 * G 4 ^ 4 + 300 / 2431 * G 4 * G 6 ^ 2" (is ?th16)
  "G 18 = 3915 / 46189 * G 4 ^ 3 * G 6 + 2750 / 92378 * G 6 ^ 3" (is ?th18)
  "G 20 = 54 / 4199 * G 4 ^ 5 + 36375 / 508079 * G 4 ^ 2 * G 6 ^ 2" (is
  ?th20)
  <proof>

end

end

```

## 8 Addition and duplication theorems for $\wp$

```

theory Weierstrass_Addition
  imports Eisenstein_Series
begin

```

In this section, we shall derive the addition theorem for  $\wp$ , and from it the duplication theorem. The addition theorem is:

$$\wp(w+z) = -\wp(w) - \wp(z) + \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{\wp'(w) - \wp'(z)}{\wp(w) - \wp(z)} \right)^2$$

We first prove this with the additional assumptions that  $w$  and  $z$  are in “general position”, i.e. we have neither  $w + 2z \in \Lambda$  nor  $z + 2w \in \Lambda$ .

After that, we will drop these unnecessary assumptions using analytic continuation. Our proof follows Lang’s presentation [2].

**lemma** *pos\_sum\_eq\_0\_imp\_empty*:

```
fixes f :: "'a ⇒ 'b :: ordered_comm_monoid_add"
assumes "(∑ x∈A. f x) = 0" "∧x. x ∈ A ⇒ f x > 0" "finite A"
shows "A = {}"
```

*<proof>*

**context** *complex\_lattice*

**begin**

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_add\_aux*:

```
assumes u12: "u1 ∉ Λ" "u2 ∉ Λ" "¬rel u1 u2" "¬rel u1 (-u2)"
assumes general_position: "u1 + 2 * u2 ∉ Λ" "2 * u1 + u2 ∉ Λ"
shows "∅ (u1 + u2) = -∅ u1 - ∅ u2 + ((∅' u1 - ∅' u2) / (∅ u1 - ∅
u2))^2 / 4"
```

*<proof>*

We now use analytic continuation to get rid of the “general position” assumption.

For this purpose, we regard  $u_1$  as fixed and view the left-hand side and the right-hand side as a function of  $u_2$ . The set of values  $u_2$  that we have to exclude is sparse, so analytic continuation works.

**theorem** *weierstrass\_fun\_add*:

```
assumes u12: "u1 ∉ Λ" "u2 ∉ Λ" "¬rel u1 u2" "¬rel u1 (-u2)"
shows "∅ (u1 + u2) = -∅ u1 - ∅ u2 + ((∅' u1 - ∅' u2) / (∅ u1 - ∅
u2))^2 / 4"
```

(is “?lhs u2 = ?rhs u2”)

*<proof>*

**lemma** *weierstrass\_fun\_diff*:

```
assumes u12: "u1 ∉ Λ" "u2 ∉ Λ" "¬rel u1 u2" "¬rel u1 (-u2)"
shows "∅ (u1 - u2) = -∅ u1 - ∅ u2 + ((∅' u1 + ∅' u2) / (∅ u1 - ∅
u2))^2 / 4"
```

*<proof>*

Using the addition theorem for  $\wp(z+w)$  and letting  $w \rightarrow z$  gives us the duplication theorem:  $\wp(2z) = -2\wp(z) + \frac{1}{4}(\wp''(z)/\wp'(z))^2$

This is Exercise 1.9 in Apostol’s book.

```

theorem weierstrass_fun_double:
  assumes z: "2 * z ∉ Λ"
  shows "ϕ (2 * z) = -2 * ϕ z + (deriv ϕ' z / ϕ' z)2 / 4"
  ⟨proof⟩

end

end

```

## 9 Eisenstein series and related invariants as modular forms

```

theory Basic_Modular_Forms
  imports Eisenstein_Series Modular_Fundamental_Region
begin

```

In a previous section we defined the Eisenstein series  $g_k$ , the modular discriminant  $\Delta$ , and Klein's invariant  $J$  in the context of a fixed complex lattice  $\Lambda(\omega_1, \omega_2)$ .

In this section, we will look at them for the lattice  $\Lambda(1, z)$  with variable  $z \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$ . Since  $\Lambda(1, z) = \Lambda(1, -z)$ , all of these notions are symmetric with respect to negation of  $z$ , so we will often assume  $\text{Im}(z) > 0$ , as is common in the literature.

We will show that all the above notions satisfy simple functional equations with respect to the modular group, namely if  $h(z) = \frac{az+b}{cz+d}$  then  $f(h(z)) = (cz+d)^k f(z)$  for some integer  $k$  specific to  $f$  (the *weight* of  $f$ ).

Meromorphic functions that satisfy such a functional equation and additionally have a meromorphic Fourier expansion at  $q = 0$  (i.e.  $z \rightarrow i\infty$ ) are called *meromorphic modular forms*. This notion will be introduced more formally in a future AFP entry, but we already show everything that is required to see that  $G_k$  (for  $k \geq 3$ ),  $\Delta$ , and  $J$  are meromorphic modular forms of weight  $k$ , 12, and 0, respectively.

### 9.1 Eisenstein series

First, we look at the Eisenstein series  $G_k(z)$ , which we define to be the Eisenstein series of the lattice generated by 1 and  $z$ . For the case where 1 and  $z$  are collinear (i.e.  $z$  lying on the real line), we return 0 by convention.

```

definition Eisenstein_G :: "nat ⇒ complex ⇒ complex" where
  "Eisenstein_G k z = (if z ∈ ℝ then 0 else complex_lattice.eisenstein_series 1 z k)"

```

```

lemma (in complex_lattice) eisenstein_series_eq_Eisenstein_G:
  "eisenstein_series k = Eisenstein_G k (ω2 / ω1) / ω1 ^ k"

```

*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_real\_eq\_0 [simp]:** "z ∈ ℝ ⇒ Eisenstein\_G k z = 0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_0 [simp]:**  
 assumes [simp]: "z ∉ ℝ"  
 shows "Eisenstein\_G 0 z = 1"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_cnj:** "Eisenstein\_G k (cnj z) = cnj (Eisenstein\_G k z)"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_odd [simp]:**  
 assumes "odd k"  
 shows "Eisenstein\_G k z = 0"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_uminus:** "Eisenstein\_G k (-z) = Eisenstein\_G k z"  
*<proof>*

**lemma**  
 assumes "k ≥ 3" "(z::complex) ∉ ℝ"  
 shows abs\_summable\_Eisenstein\_G:  
 "(λ(m,n). 1 / norm (of\_int m + of\_int n \* z) ^ k) summable\_on  
 (-{(0,0)})"  
 and summable\_Eisenstein\_G:  
 "(λ(m,n). 1 / (of\_int m + of\_int n \* z) ^ k) summable\_on (-{(0,0)})"  
 and has\_sum\_Eisenstein\_G:  
 "((λ(m,n). 1 / (of\_int m + of\_int n \* z) ^ k) has\_sum Eisenstein\_G  
 k z) (-{(0,0)})"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_analytic [analytic\_intros]:**  
 assumes "f analytic\_on A" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ odd k ∨ f z ∉ ℝ"  
 shows "(λz. Eisenstein\_G k (f z)) analytic\_on A"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_holomorphic [holomorphic\_intros]:**  
 assumes "f holomorphic\_on A" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ odd k ∨ f z ∉ ℝ"  
 shows "(λz. Eisenstein\_G k (f z)) holomorphic\_on A"  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_meromorphic [meromorphic\_intros]:**  
 assumes "f analytic\_on A" "∧z. z ∈ A ⇒ odd k ∨ f z ∉ ℝ"  
 shows "(λz. Eisenstein\_G k (f z)) meromorphic\_on A"  
*<proof>*

We can also lift our earlier results about the Fourier expansion of  $G_k$  to this

new viewpoint of  $G_k(z)$ . This is Theorem 1.18 in Apostol's book.

**theorem Eisenstein\_G\_fourier\_expansion:**  
**fixes**  $z :: \text{complex}$  **and**  $k :: \text{nat}$   
**assumes**  $z$ : " $\text{Im } z > 0$ "  
**assumes**  $k$ : " $k \geq 2$ " "even  $k$ "  
**shows** " $\text{Eisenstein\_G } k \ z =$   
 $2 * (\text{zeta } k + (2 * i * \pi) ^ k / \text{fact } (k - 1) * \text{lambert } (\lambda n. \text{of\_nat}$   
 $n ^ (k - 1)) (\text{to\_q } 1 \ z))$ "  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

We show how the modular group acts on  $G_k$ . The case  $k = 2$  is more complicated and will be dealt with later.

**theorem Eisenstein\_G\_apply\_modgrp:**  
**assumes** " $k \neq 2$ "  
**shows** " $\text{Eisenstein\_G } k (\text{apply\_modgrp } f \ z) = \text{modgrp\_factor } f \ z ^ k * \text{Eisenstein\_G } k \ z$ "  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_plus\_int:** " $\text{Eisenstein\_G } k (z + \text{of\_int } m) = \text{Eisenstein\_G } k \ z$ "  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

## 9.2 The normalised Eisenstein series

The literature also often defines the *normalised* Eisenstein series  $E_k$ , which is  $G_k$  divided by the constant  $2\zeta(k)$ . This leads to the somewhat nicer Fourier expansion

$$E_k(z) = 1 - \frac{2k}{B_k} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sigma_{k-1}(n) q^n .$$

**definition Eisenstein\_E :: "nat  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where**  
**"Eisenstein\_E**  $k \ z = (\text{if } k = 0 \text{ then if } z \in \mathbb{R} \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } 1 \text{ else } \text{Eisenstein\_G}$   
 $k \ z / (2 * \text{zeta } k))$ "

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_fourier:**  
**assumes** " $\text{Im } z > 0$ " " $k \geq 2$ " "even  $k$ "  
**shows** " $\text{Eisenstein\_E } k \ z = 1 - 2 * k / \text{bernoulli } k * \text{lambert } (\lambda n.$   
 $n ^ (k - 1)) (\text{to\_q } 1 \ z)$ "  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_0 [simp]:** " $z \notin \mathbb{R} \Rightarrow \text{Eisenstein\_E } 0 \ z = 1$ "  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_real\_eq\_0 [simp]:** " $z \in \mathbb{R} \Rightarrow \text{Eisenstein\_E } k \ z = 0$ "  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_cnj:** " $\text{Eisenstein\_E } k (\text{cnj } z) = \text{cnj } (\text{Eisenstein\_E } k \ z)$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_odd [simp]:**

assumes "odd k"

shows "Eisenstein\_E k z = 0"

*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_uminus:** "Eisenstein\_E k (-z) = Eisenstein\_E k z"

*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_analytic [analytic\_intros]:**

assumes "f analytic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{odd } k \vee f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "

shows " $(\lambda z. \text{Eisenstein\_E } k (f z)) \text{ analytic\_on } A$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_holomorphic [holomorphic\_intros]:**

assumes "f holomorphic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{odd } k \vee f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "

shows " $(\lambda z. \text{Eisenstein\_E } k (f z)) \text{ holomorphic\_on } A$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_E\_meromorphic [meromorphic\_intros]:**

assumes "f analytic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{odd } k \vee f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "

shows " $(\lambda z. \text{Eisenstein\_E } k (f z)) \text{ meromorphic\_on } A$ "

*<proof>*

**theorem Eisenstein\_E\_apply\_modgrp:**

assumes "k  $\neq$  2"

shows "Eisenstein\_E k (apply\_modgrp f z) = modgrp\_factor f z  $^k$  \* Eisenstein\_E k z"

*<proof>*

### 9.3 The modular discriminant

**definition modular\_discr :: "complex  $\implies$  complex" where**

"modular\_discr z = (60 \* Eisenstein\_G 4 z)  $^3$  - 27 \* (140 \* Eisenstein\_G 6 z)  $^2$ "

**lemma (in complex\_lattice) discr\_eq\_modular\_discr:** "discr = modular\_discr ( $\omega_2 / \omega_1$ ) /  $\omega_1^{12}$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma modular\_discr\_real\_eq\_0 [simp]:** "z  $\in \mathbb{R} \implies \text{modular\_discr } z = 0$ "

*<proof>*

**lemma modular\_discr\_cnj:** "modular\_discr (cnj z) = cnj (modular\_discr z)"

*<proof>*

**lemma modular\_discr\_analytic [analytic\_intros]:**

```

assumes "f analytic_on A" " $\wedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "
shows "( $\lambda z. \text{modular\_discr } (f z)$ ) analytic_on A"
<proof>

lemma modular_discr_holomorphic [holomorphic_intros]:
assumes "f holomorphic_on A" " $\wedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "
shows "( $\lambda z. \text{modular\_discr } (f z)$ ) holomorphic_on A"
<proof>

lemma modular_discr_uminus: "modular_discr (-z) = modular_discr z"
<proof>

lemma modular_discr_nonzero:
assumes "z  $\notin \mathbb{R}$ "
shows "modular_discr z  $\neq 0$ "
<proof>

lemma modular_discr_eq_0_iff: "modular_discr z = 0  $\longleftrightarrow z \in \mathbb{R}$ "
<proof>

theorem modular_discr_apply_modgrp:
"modular_discr (apply_modgrp f z) = modgrp_factor f z ^ 12 * modular_discr
z"
<proof>

lemma modular_discr_plus_int: "modular_discr (z + of_int m) = modular_discr
z"
<proof>

lemma modular_discr_minus_one_over: "modular_discr (-(1/z)) = z ^ 12
* modular_discr z"
<proof>

9.4 Klein's J invariant

definition Klein_J :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" where
"Klein_J z = (60 * Eisenstein_G 4 z) ^ 3 / modular_discr z"

lemma (in complex_lattice) invariant_j_eq_Klein_J:
"invariant_j = Klein_J ( $\omega_2 / \omega_1$ )"
<proof>

lemma Klein_J_real_eq_0 [simp]: "z  $\in \mathbb{R} \implies \text{Klein\_J } z = 0$ "
<proof>

lemma Klein_J_uminus: "Klein_J (-z) = Klein_J z"
<proof>

lemma Klein_J_cnj: "Klein_J (cnj z) = cnj (Klein_J z)"

```

*<proof>*

**lemma** *Klein\_J\_analytic* [*analytic\_intros*]:  
 **assumes** "f analytic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "  
 **shows** " $(\lambda z. \text{Klein}_J (f z))$  analytic\_on A"  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *Klein\_J\_holomorphic* [*holomorphic\_intros*]:  
 **assumes** "f holomorphic\_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies f z \notin \mathbb{R}$ "  
 **shows** " $(\lambda z. \text{Klein}_J (f z))$  holomorphic\_on A"  
*<proof>*

It is trivial to show that Klein's  $J$  function is invariant under the modular group. This is Apostol's Theorem 1.16.

**theorem** *Klein\_J\_apply\_modgrp*:  
 " $\text{Klein}_J (\text{apply\_modgrp } f z) = \text{Klein}_J z$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *Klein\_J\_plus\_int*: " $\text{Klein}_J (z + \text{of\_int } m) = \text{Klein}_J z$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *Klein\_J\_minus\_one\_over*: " $\text{Klein}_J (-(1/z)) = \text{Klein}_J z$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *Klein\_J\_cong*:  
 **assumes** " $w \sim_{\Gamma} z$ "  
 **shows** " $\text{Klein}_J w = \text{Klein}_J z$ "  
*<proof>*

## 9.5 Values at specific points

**unbundle** *modfun\_region\_notation*

Let  $k \geq 2$ . The points  $i$  and  $\rho$  are fixed points of the modular transformations  $S$  and  $ST$ , respectively. Using this together with the modular transformation law for  $G_k$ , it directly follows that  $G_k(i) = 0$  unless  $k$  is a multiple of 4 and  $G_k(\rho) = 0$  unless  $k$  is a multiple of 6.

These facts are part of Apostol's Exercise 1.12 and generalise some facts derived in his Theorem 2.7.

The values  $G_2(i) = \pi$  and  $G_2(\rho) = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$  can be determined in the same fashion once we have proven the transformation law for  $G_2$ .

**lemma** *Eisenstein\_G\_ii\_eq\_0*:  
 **assumes** " $k \neq 2$ " " $\neg 4 \text{ dvd } k$ "  
 **shows** " $\text{Eisenstein}_G k i = 0$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *Eisenstein\_G\_6\_ii* [*simp*]: " $\text{Eisenstein}_G 6 i = 0$ "  
*<proof>*

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_rho\_eq\_0:**  
 assumes "k ≠ 2" "¬6 dvd k"  
 shows "Eisenstein\_G k ρ = 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma Eisenstein\_G\_4\_rho [simp]:** "Eisenstein\_G 4 ρ = 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**corollary Eisenstein\_G\_6\_rho\_nonzero:** "Eisenstein\_G 6 ρ ≠ 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**corollary Eisenstein\_G\_4\_ii\_nonzero:** "Eisenstein\_G 4 i ≠ 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**corollary Klein\_J\_rho [simp]:** "Klein\_J ρ = 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**corollary Klein\_J\_ii [simp]:** "Klein\_J i = 1"  
 ⟨proof⟩

## 9.6 Consequences for the fundamental region

One immediate consequence of the fact that  $J(\rho) = 0$  and  $J(i) = 1$  is that  $\rho$  and  $i$  are not equivalent w.r.t. the modular group.

**lemma not\_rho\_equiv\_i [simp]:** "¬(ρ ~<sub>Γ</sub> i)"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma not\_i\_equiv\_rho [simp]:** "¬(i ~<sub>Γ</sub> ρ)"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma not\_modular\_group\_rel\_rho\_i [simp]:** "z ~<sub>Γ</sub> ρ ⇒ ¬z ~<sub>Γ</sub> i"  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma modular\_group\_rel\_rho\_i\_cases [case\_names rho i neither invalid]:**  
 obtains "z ~<sub>Γ</sub> ρ" "¬z ~<sub>Γ</sub> i" | "z ~<sub>Γ</sub> i" "¬z ~<sub>Γ</sub> ρ" | "Im z > 0" "¬z ~<sub>Γ</sub> ρ" "¬z ~<sub>Γ</sub> i" | "Im z ≤ 0"  
 ⟨proof⟩

Another application of the Klein  $J$  function: We can show that subgroups of the modular group have discrete orbits. That is: every point has a neighbourhood in which no equivalent points are.

**lemma (in modgrp\_subgroup) isolated\_in\_orbit:**  
 assumes "Im y > 0"  
 shows "¬y islimpt orbit x"  
 ⟨proof⟩

```

lemma (in modgrp_subgroup) discrete_orbit: "discrete (orbit x)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma (in modgrp_subgroup) eventually_not_rel_at:
  "Im x > 0 ⇒ eventually (λy. ¬rel y x) (at x)"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma (in modgrp_subgroup) closed_orbit [intro]: "closedin (top_of_set
{z. Im z > 0}) (orbit x)"
  ⟨proof⟩

unbundle no_modfun_region_notation

end

```

## 10 Related facts about Jacobi theta functions

```

theory Theta_Inversion
imports
  "Theta_Functions.Jacobi_Triple_Product"
  "Theta_Functions.Theta_Nullwert"
  Complex_Lattices
begin

lemmas [simp del] = div_mult_self1 div_mult_self2 div_mult_self3 div_mult_self4

```

In this section we will re-use some of the lemmas we proved to study elliptic functions in order to show two non-trivial facts about the Jacobi theta functions. The first one is a uniqueness result:

We know that  $\vartheta_{00}(z, t)$ , viewed as a function of  $z$  for fixed  $t$ , is entire, periodic with period 1, and quasi-periodic with period  $t$  and factor  $e^{-2z-t}$ . We will show that for any fixed  $t$  in the upper half plane,  $\vartheta_{00}(\cdot, t)$  is actually uniquely defined by these relations, up to a constant factor.

### 10.1 Uniqueness of quasi-periodic entire functions

We first show a fairly obvious fact: in any complete real normed field, the separable ordinary differential equation  $f'(x) = g(x)f(x)$  has at most one solution up to a constant factor in any complex domain.

If a non-vanishing function  $G$  satisfies  $G'(x) = g(x)G(x)$ , then  $G$  is that solution. This allows us to “certify” a solution easily.

```

lemma separable_ODE_simple_unique:
  fixes f :: "'a :: {banach, real_normed_field} ⇒ 'a"
  assumes eq: "∧x. x ∈ A ⇒ f' x = g x * f x"

```

```

  assumes deriv_f: " $\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies (f \text{ has\_field\_derivative } f' \ x)$  (at
x within A)"
  assumes deriv_g: " $\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies (G \text{ has\_field\_derivative } (g \ x * G \ x))$ 
(at x within A)"
  assumes nonzero [simp]: " $\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies G \ x \neq 0$ "
  assumes "convex A"
  shows " $\exists c. \forall x \in A. f \ x = c * G \ x$ "
<proof>

```

The following locale captures the notion of an entire function in the complex plane that satisfies the same (quasi-)periodicity as the Jacobi theta function  $\vartheta_{00}$ , namely  $f(z+1) = f(z)$  and  $f(z+t) = e^{-2z-t}f(z)$  for some fixed  $t$  with  $\text{Im}(t) > 0$ .

We will show that any such function is equal to  $\vartheta_{00}$  up to a constant factor.

```

locale thetalike_function =
  fixes f :: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex" and t :: complex
  assumes entire: "f holomorphic_on UNIV"
  assumes Im_t: "Im t > 0"
  assumes f_plus_1: "f (z + 1) = f z"
  assumes f_plus_quasiperiod: "f (z + t) = f z / to_nome (2*z+t)"
begin

```

```

lemma holomorphic:
  assumes "g holomorphic_on A"
  shows " $(\lambda x. f (g \ x))$  holomorphic_on A"
<proof>

```

```

lemma analytic:
  assumes "g analytic_on A"
  shows " $(\lambda x. f (g \ x))$  analytic_on A"
<proof>

```

We first show some straightforward facts about the behaviour of  $f$  on the lattice generated by 1 and  $t$ .

```

sublocale lattice: std_complex_lattice t
  <proof>

```

```

lemma f_plus_of_nat: "f (z + of_nat n) = f z"
<proof>

```

```

lemma f_plus_of_int: "f (z + of_int n) = f z"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma f_plus_of_nat_quasiperiod:
  "f (z + of_nat n * t) = f z / to_nome (2 * of_nat n * z + of_nat (n2)
* t)"
  <proof>

```

```

lemma f_plus_of_int_quasiperiod:
  "f (z + of_int n * t) = f z / to_nome (2 * of_int n * z + of_int (n^2)
  * t)"
<proof>

```

```

lemma relE:
  assumes "lattice.rel z z'"
  obtains m n :: int where "z = z' + of_int m + of_int n * t"
<proof>

```

```

lemma f_zero_cong_lattice:
  assumes "lattice.rel z z'"
  shows "f z = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  f z' = 0"
<proof>

```

```

lemma zorder_f_cong_lattice:
  assumes "lattice.rel z z'"
  shows "zorder f z = zorder f z'"
<proof>

```

```

lemma deriv_f_plus_1: "deriv f (z + 1) = deriv f z"
<proof>

```

```

lemma deriv_f_plus_quasiperiod:
  "deriv f (z + t) = (deriv f z - 2 * pi * i * f z) / to_nome (2 * z +
  t)"
<proof>

```

Next, we will simplify the integral

$$\int_{\gamma} \frac{h(z)f'(z)}{f(z)} dz$$

for an arbitrary function  $h(z)$  using the shift relations for  $f$ . Here,  $\gamma$  is a counter-clockwise contour along the border of a period parallelogram with lower left corner  $b$  and no zeros of  $f$  on it.

We find that:

$$\int_{\gamma} \frac{h(z)f'(z)}{f(z)} dz = \int_b^{b+1} (h(z)-h(z+t)) \frac{f'(z)}{f(z)} + 2\pi i h(z+t) dz - \int_b^{b+t} (h(z)-h(z+1)) \frac{f'(z)}{f(z)} dz$$

```

lemma argument_principle_f_gen:
  fixes orig :: complex
  defines "\gamma \equiv parallelogram_path orig 1 t"
  assumes h: "h holomorphic_on UNIV"
  assumes nz: "\z. z \in path_image \gamma \implies f z \neq 0"
  shows "contour_integral \gamma (\lambda x. h x * deriv f x / f x) =
        contour_integral (linepath orig (orig + 1))

```

```

      (λz. (h z - h (z + t)) * deriv f z / f z + 2 * pi * i * h
(z + t)) -
      contour_integral (linepath orig (orig + t))
      (λz. (h z - h (z + 1)) * deriv f z / f z)"
⟨proof⟩

```

We now instantiate the above fact with  $h(z) = 1$  and see that the corresponding integral divided by  $2\pi i$  evaluates to 1. This will later tell us that every period parallelogram contains exactly one root of  $f$ , and that it is a simple root.

```

lemma argument_principle_f_1:
  fixes orig :: complex
  defines "γ ≡ parallelogram_path orig 1 t"
  assumes nz: "∧z. z ∈ path_image γ ⇒ f z ≠ 0"
  shows "contour_integral γ (λz. deriv f z / f z) = 2 * pi * i"
⟨proof⟩

```

Next, we instantiate the lemma with  $h(z) = z$  and see that the integral divided by  $2\pi i$  evaluates to some value of the form  $\frac{t+1}{2} + m + nt$  for integers  $m, n$ . In other words: it evaluates to some value equivalent to  $\frac{t+1}{2}$  modulo our lattice.

This will later tell us that the roots of  $f$  in any period parallelogram sum to something equivalent to  $\frac{t+1}{2}$ . Since we know there is only one root and it is simple, this means that the only root in each period parallelogram is the copy of  $\frac{t+1}{2}$  contained in it.

```

lemma argument_principle_f_z:
  fixes orig :: complex
  defines "γ ≡ parallelogram_path orig 1 t"
  assumes nz: "∧z. z ∈ path_image γ ⇒ f z ≠ 0"
  shows "lattice.rel (contour_integral γ (λz. z * deriv f z / f z) /
(2*pi*i)) ((t+1)/2)"
⟨proof⟩

```

We now tie everything together and prove the fact mentioned above: the zeros of  $f$  are precisely the shifted copies of  $\frac{t+1}{2}$ , and they are all simple. Unless of course  $f(z)$  is identically zero.

```

lemma zero_iff:
  assumes "¬(∃z. f z = 0)"
  shows "f z = 0 ↔ lattice.rel z ((t + 1) / 2)"
  and "lattice.rel z ((t + 1) / 2) ⇒ zorder f z = 1"
⟨proof⟩

```

Finally, we conclude that our quasi-periodic function is in fact a multiple of  $\vartheta_{00}$ .

```

theorem multiple_jacobi_theta_00: "∃c. ∀z. f z = c * jacobi_theta_00
z t"

```

*<proof>*

**end**

## 10.2 Theta inversion

Using the fact that any quasiperiodic function (in the sense used above) is a multiple of  $\vartheta_{00}$  and the heat equation for  $\vartheta_{00}$ , we can now relatively easily prove the theta inversion identity, which describes how  $\vartheta_{00}$  transforms under the modular transformation  $t \mapsto -\frac{1}{t}$ :

$$\vartheta_{00}(z, -1/t) = \sqrt{-ite^{i\pi tz^2}} \vartheta_{00}(tz, t)$$

In particular, this means that  $\vartheta_{00}(0, t)$  is a modular form of weight  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**theorem** *jacobi\_theta\_00\_minus\_one\_over:*

```
fixes z t :: complex
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_00 z (-1/t) = csqrt (-(i*t)) * to_nome (t*z^2)
* jacobi_theta_00 (t*z) t"
<proof>
```

Equivalent identities for the other  $\vartheta_{xx}$  follow:

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_01\_minus\_one\_over:*

```
fixes z t :: complex
assumes "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_01 z (-1/t) = csqrt (-(i*t)) * to_nome (t*z^2)
* jacobi_theta_10 (t*z) t"
<proof>
```

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_10\_minus\_one\_over:*

```
fixes z t :: complex
assumes "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_10 z (-1/t) = csqrt (-(i*t)) * to_nome (t*z^2)
* jacobi_theta_01 (t*z) t"
<proof>
```

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_11\_minus\_one\_over:*

```
fixes z t :: complex
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_11 z (-1/t) = -i * csqrt (-(i*t)) * to_nome (t*z^2)
* jacobi_theta_11 (t*z) t"
<proof>
```

## 10.3 Theta nullwert inversions in the reals

We can thus translate the above theta inversion identities into the  $q$ -disc. For simplicity, we only do this for real  $q$  with  $0 < q < 1$ , and we will focus

mostly on the theta nullwert functions, where the identities are particularly nice (and stay within the reals).

We introduce the “ $q$  inversion” function

$$f : [0, 1] \rightarrow [0, 1], f(q) = \exp(\pi^2 / \log q)$$

with the border values  $f(0) = 1$  and  $f(1) = 0$ . This function is a strictly decreasing involution on the real interval  $[0, 1]$ . It corresponds to translating  $q$  from the  $q$ -disc to the  $z$ -plane, doing the transformation  $z \mapsto -1/z$ , and then translating the result back into the  $q$ -disc.

This is useful for computing  $\vartheta_i(q)$ , since we can apply the inversion to bring any  $q$  in the unit disc very close to 0, where the power series of  $\vartheta_i$  converges extremely quickly.

**definition** `q_inversion` :: "real  $\Rightarrow$  real" where

"`q_inversion q = (if q = 0 then 1 else if q = 1 then 0 else exp (pi2 / ln q))`"

**lemma** `q_inversion_0 [simp]`: "`q_inversion 0 = 1`"

**and** `q_inversion_1 [simp]`: "`q_inversion 1 = 0`"

`<proof>`

**lemma** `q_inversion_nonneg`: "`q  $\in$  {0..1}  $\implies$  q_inversion q  $\geq$  0`"

**and** `q_inversion_le_1`: "`q  $\in$  {0..1}  $\implies$  q_inversion q  $\leq$  1`"

**and** `q_inversion_pos`: "`q  $\in$  {0.. $<$ 1}  $\implies$  q_inversion q  $>$  0`"

**and** `q_inversion_less_1`: "`q  $\in$  {0<.. $<$ 1}  $\implies$  q_inversion q  $<$  1`"

`<proof>`

**lemma** `q_inversion_strict_antimono`: "`strict_antimono_on {0..1} q_inversion`"

`<proof>`

**lemma** `q_inversion_less_iff`:

**assumes** "`q  $\in$  {0..1}`" "`q'  $\in$  {0..1}`"

**shows** "`q_inversion q  $<$  q_inversion q'  $\iff$  q  $>$  q'`"

`<proof>`

**lemma** `q_inversion_le_iff`:

**assumes** "`q  $\in$  {0..1}`" "`q'  $\in$  {0..1}`"

**shows** "`q_inversion q  $\leq$  q_inversion q'  $\iff$  q  $\geq$  q'`"

`<proof>`

**lemma** `q_inversion_eq_iff`:

**assumes** "`q  $\in$  {0..1}`" "`q'  $\in$  {0..1}`"

**shows** "`q_inversion q = q_inversion q'  $\iff$  q = q'`"

`<proof>`

**lemma** `q_inversion_involution`:

**assumes** "`q  $\in$  {0..1}`"

**shows** "`q_inversion (q_inversion q) = q`"

*<proof>*

```
lemma continuous_q_inversion [continuous_intros]:  
  assumes q: "q ∈ {0..1}"  
  shows "continuous (at q within {0..1}) q_inversion"  
<proof>
```

```
lemma continuous_on_q_inversion [continuous_intros]: "continuous_on {0..1}  
q_inversion"  
<proof>
```

```
lemma continuous_on_q_inversion' [continuous_intros]:  
  assumes "continuous_on A f" " $\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies f x \in \{0..1\}$ "  
  shows "continuous_on A ( $\lambda x. q\_inversion (f x)$ )"  
<proof>
```

```
definition q_inversion_fixedpoint :: real where  
  "q_inversion_fixedpoint = exp (-pi)"
```

```
lemma q_inversion_fixedpoint:  
  defines "q0 ≡ q_inversion_fixedpoint"  
  shows "q0 ∈ {0..1}" "q_inversion q0 = q0"  
<proof>
```

```
lemma q_inversion_less_self_iff:  
  assumes "q ∈ {0..1}"  
  shows "q_inversion q < q  $\longleftrightarrow$  q > q_inversion_fixedpoint"  
<proof>
```

```
lemma q_inversion_greater_self_iff:  
  assumes "q ∈ {0..1}"  
  shows "q_inversion q > q  $\longleftrightarrow$  q < q_inversion_fixedpoint"  
<proof>
```

From the theta inversion identities, we get three identities of the form  $\vartheta_i(f(q)) = \sqrt{-\ln q/\pi} \vartheta_j(q)$ . This can be harnessed to evaluate the theta nullwert functions very rapidly: their power series converge extremely quickly for small  $q$ , and since  $f(q)$  has a unique fixed point  $q_0 = e^{-\pi} \approx 0.0432$ , we can reduce the computation of theta nullwert functions to computing them for  $q$  with  $q \leq q_0$  via the inversion formulas.

```
lemma jacobi_theta_nome_inversion_real:  
  fixes w q :: real  
  assumes q: "q ∈ {0<.. $<1\}$ " and w: "w > 0"  
  shows "jacobi_theta_nome (of_real w) (of_real q) =  
    complex_of_real (sqrt (- pi / ln q) * exp (- (ln w)2 / (4 *  
ln q))) *  
    jacobi_theta_nome (cis (-pi * ln w / ln q)) (of_real (exp (pi2  
/ ln q)))"
```

*<proof>*

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_nome\_1\_left\_inversion\_real:*

assumes  $q: "q \in \{0..<1\}"$

shows "*jacobi\_theta\_nome 1 (q\_inversion q) = sqrt (-ln q / pi) \* jacobi\_theta\_nome 1 q*"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_nw\_00\_inversion\_real:*

assumes  $q: "q \in \{0..<1::real\}"$

shows "*jacobi\_theta\_nw\_00 (q\_inversion q) = sqrt (-ln q / pi) \* jacobi\_theta\_nw\_00 q*"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_nw\_01\_inversion\_real:*

assumes  $q: "q \in \{0..<1::real\}"$

shows "*jacobi\_theta\_nw\_01 (q\_inversion q) = sqrt (-ln q / pi) \* jacobi\_theta\_nw\_10 q*"

*<proof>*

**lemma** *jacobi\_theta\_nw\_10\_inversion\_real:*

assumes  $q: "q \in \{0<..1::real\}"$

shows "*jacobi\_theta\_nw\_10 (q\_inversion q) = sqrt (-ln q / pi) \* jacobi\_theta\_nw\_01 q*"

*<proof>*

**end**

## 11 The Dedekind $\eta$ function

**theory** *Dedekind\_Eta*

**imports**

*Bernoulli.Bernoulli*

*Theta\_Inversion*

*Basic\_Modular\_Forms*

*Dedekind\_Sums.Dedekind\_Sums*

*Pentagonal\_Number\_Theorem.Pentagonal\_Number\_Theorem*

**begin**

**hide\_const** (**open**) *Unique\_Factorization.coprime*

### 11.1 Definition and basic properties

**definition** *dedekind\_eta:: "complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex"* (" $\eta$ ") **where**

" $\eta z = \text{to\_nome } (z / 12) * \text{euler\_phi } (\text{to\_nome } (2*z))$ "

**lemma** *dedekind\_eta\_nonzero [simp]: "Im z > 0  $\implies$   $\eta z \neq 0$ "*

*<proof>*

```

lemma holomorphic_dedekind_eta [holomorphic_intros]:
  assumes "A  $\subseteq$  {z. Im z > 0}"
  shows "η holomorphic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma holomorphic_dedekind_eta' [holomorphic_intros]:
  assumes "f holomorphic_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{Im } (f z) > 0$ "
  shows " $(\lambda z. \eta (f z))$  holomorphic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma analytic_dedekind_eta [analytic_intros]:
  assumes "A  $\subseteq$  {z. Im z > 0}"
  shows "η analytic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma analytic_dedekind_eta' [analytic_intros]:
  assumes "f analytic_on A" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{Im } (f z) > 0$ "
  shows " $(\lambda z. \eta (f z))$  analytic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma meromorphic_on_dedekind_eta [meromorphic_intros]:
  "f analytic_on A  $\implies$  ( $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{Im } (f z) > 0$ )  $\implies$   $(\lambda z. \eta (f z))$ 
  meromorphic_on A"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma continuous_on_dedekind_eta [continuous_intros]:
  "A  $\subseteq$  {z. Im z > 0}  $\implies$  continuous_on A η"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma continuous_on_dedekind_eta' [continuous_intros]:
  assumes "continuous_on A f" " $\bigwedge z. z \in A \implies \text{Im } (f z) > 0$ "
  shows "continuous_on A  $(\lambda z. \eta (f z))$ "
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma tendsto_dedekind_eta [tendsto_intros]:
  assumes "(f  $\longrightarrow$  c) F" "Im c > 0"
  shows " $((\lambda x. \eta (f x)) \longrightarrow \eta c)$  F"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma tendsto_at_cusp_dedekind_eta [tendsto_intros]: "(η  $\longrightarrow$  0) at_i∞"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma dedekind_eta_plus1:
  assumes z: "Im z > 0"
  shows "η (z + 1) = cis (pi/12) * η z"
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma dedekind_eta_plus_nat:

```

```

assumes z: "Im z > 0"
shows    "η (z + of_nat n) = cis (pi * n / 12) * η z"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma dedekind_eta_plus_int:
assumes z: "Im z > 0"
shows    "η (z + of_int n) = cis (pi*n/12) * η z"
⟨proof⟩

```

The logarithmic derivative of  $\eta$  is, up to a constant factor, the “forbidden” Eisenstein series  $G_2$ . This follows relatively easily from the logarithmic derivative of Euler’s function  $\phi$  and the Fourier expansion of  $G_2$ , both of which involve the Lambert series  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k \frac{q^k}{1-q^k}$ .

```

theorem deriv_dedekind_eta:
assumes z: "Im z > 0"
shows    "deriv η z = i / (4 * of_real pi) * Eisenstein_G 2 z * η z"
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma has_field_derivative_dedekind_eta:
assumes "(f has_field_derivative f') (at x within A)" "Im (f x) > 0"
shows    "((λx. η (f x)) has_field_derivative
            (i / (4 * of_real pi) * Eisenstein_G 2 (f x) * η (f x) * f'))
(at x within A)"
⟨proof⟩

```

## 11.2 Relation to the Jacobi $\vartheta$ functions

```

lemma dedekind_eta_conv_jacobi_theta_01:
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows    "η t = to_nome (t / 12) * jacobi_theta_01 (-t/2) (3 * t)"
⟨proof⟩
include qepochhammer_inf_notation
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma jacobi_theta_01_nw_conv_dedekind_eta:
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows    "jacobi_theta_01 0 t = η (t/2) ^ 2 / η t"
⟨proof⟩
include qepochhammer_inf_notation
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma jacobi_theta_00_nw_conv_dedekind_eta:
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows    "jacobi_theta_00 0 t = η ((t+1)/2) ^ 2 / η (t+1)"
⟨proof⟩
include qepochhammer_inf_notation
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma jacobi_theta_00_nw_conv_dedekind_eta':

```

```

assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_00 0 t =  $\eta t^5 / (\eta(t/2) * \eta(2t))^2$ "
<proof>
include qepochhammer_inf_notation
<proof>

lemma jacobi_theta_10_nw_conv_dedekind_eta:
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_10 0 t =  $2 * \eta(2t)^2 / \eta t$ "
<proof>
include qepochhammer_inf_notation
<proof>

lemma jacobi_theta_00_01_10_nw_conv_dedekind_eta:
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_00 0 t * jacobi_theta_01 0 t * jacobi_theta_10
0 t =  $2 * \eta t^3$ "
<proof>

```

### 11.3 The inversion identity

The inversion identity for Jacobi's  $\vartheta$  function together with the Jacobi triple product allows us to give a rather short proof of the inversion law for  $\eta$ . This is remarkable: Apostol spends the majority of the chapter on proving this.

We would like to thank Alexey Ustinov, who answered a question of ours on MathOverflow and clarified how to prove the following lemma.

```

lemma dedekind_eta_minus_one_over_aux:
assumes "Im t > 0"
shows "jacobi_theta_10 (1 / 6) (t / 3) =
of_real (sqrt 3) * to_nome (t / 12) * jacobi_theta_01 (-t
/ 2) (3 * t)"
<proof>
include qepochhammer_inf_notation
<proof>

theorem dedekind_eta_minus_one_over:
assumes t: "Im t > 0"
shows " $\eta(-1/t) = \text{csqrt}(-i*t) * \eta t$ "
<proof>

```

### 11.4 General transformation law

From our results so far, it is easy to see that  $\eta^{24}$  is a modular form of weight 12. Thus it follows that if  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}(2)$  is a modular transformation, then  $\eta(Az) = \epsilon(A)\sqrt{z}\eta(z)$ , where  $\epsilon(A)$  is a 24-th unit root that depends on

$A$  but not on  $z$ .

In this section, we will give a concrete definition of this 24-th root  $\varepsilon$  in terms of  $A$ .

**definition** `dedekind_eps` :: "modgrp  $\Rightarrow$  complex" (" $\varepsilon$ ") where

```
" $\varepsilon$  f =
  (if is_singular_modgrp f then
    cis (pi * ((modgrp_a f + modgrp_d f) / (12 * modgrp_c f) -
      dedekind_sum (modgrp_d f) (modgrp_c f) - 1 / 4))
  else
    cis (pi * modgrp_b f / 12)
  )"

```

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_1 [simp]`: "`dedekind_eps 1 = 1`"

*<proof>*

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_shift [simp]`: " `$\varepsilon$  (shift_modgrp m) = cis (pi * m / 12)`"

*<proof>*

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_S [simp]`: "`dedekind_eps S_modgrp = cis (-pi / 4)`"

*<proof>*

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_shift_right [simp]`: " `$\varepsilon$  (f * shift_modgrp m) = cis (pi * m / 12) *  $\varepsilon$  f`"

*<proof>*

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_shift_left [simp]`: " `$\varepsilon$  (shift_modgrp m * f) = cis (pi * m / 12) *  $\varepsilon$  f`"

*<proof>*

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_S_right`:

**assumes** "`is_singular_modgrp f`" "`modgrp_d f  $\neq$  0`"

**shows** " `$\varepsilon$  (f * S_modgrp) = cis (-sgn (modgrp_d f) * pi / 4) *  $\varepsilon$  f`"

*<proof>*

**lemma** `dedekind_eps_root_of_unity`: " `$\varepsilon$  f  $^$  24 = 1`"

*<proof>*

The following theorem is Apostol's Theorem 3.4: the general functional equation for Dedekind's  $\eta$  function.

Our version is actually more general than Apostol's lemma since it also holds for modular groups with  $c = 0$  (i.e. shifts, i.e.  $T^n$ ). We also use a slightly different definition of  $\varepsilon$  though, namely the one from Wikipedia. This makes the functional equation look a bit nicer than Apostol's version.

**theorem** `dedekind_eta_apply_modgrp`:

**assumes** "`Im z > 0`"

**shows** " `$\eta$  (apply_modgrp f z) =  $\varepsilon$  f * csqrt (modgrp_factor f z) *  $\eta$  z`"

*<proof>*

**no\_notation** dedekind\_eta ("η")  
**no\_notation** dedekind\_eps ("ε")

**end**

## 11.5 The transformation law for $G_2$

**theory** Eisenstein\_G2  
  **imports** Dedekind\_Eta  
**begin**

In his book, Apostol derives the inversion law for  $G_2$  in the exercises to Chapter 3 and remarks that it leads to a proof of the inversion law for  $\eta$ . Since we already have a nice and short proof for the inversion law for  $\eta$ , we instead go the other direction. We differentiate the inversion law for  $\eta$  and easily obtain the corresponding law for  $G_2$

**theorem** Eisenstein\_G2\_minus\_one\_over:  
  **assumes**  $t: "Im\ t > 0"$   
  **shows**  $"Eisenstein\_G\ 2\ (-1/t) = t^2 * Eisenstein\_G\ 2\ t - 2 * pi * i * t"$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** Eisenstein\_E2\_minus\_one\_over:  
  **assumes**  $t: "Im\ t > 0"$   
  **shows**  $"Eisenstein\_E\ 2\ (-1/t) = t^2 * Eisenstein\_E\ 2\ t - 6 * i / pi * t"$   
*<proof>*

In a similar fashion to the  $\eta$  function, we can prove the general modular transformation law for  $G_2$ :

**theorem** Eisenstein\_G2\_apply\_modgrp:  
  **assumes**  $"Im\ z > 0"$   
  **shows**  $"Eisenstein\_G\ 2\ (apply\_modgrp\ f\ z) = modgrp\_factor\ f\ z^2 * Eisenstein\_G\ 2\ z - 2 * i * pi * modgrp\_c\ f * modgrp\_factor\ f\ z"$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** Eisenstein\_E2\_apply\_modgrp:  
  **assumes**  $"Im\ z > 0"$   
  **shows**  $"Eisenstein\_E\ 2\ (apply\_modgrp\ f\ z) = modgrp\_factor\ f\ z^2 * Eisenstein\_E\ 2\ z - 6 * i / pi * modgrp\_c\ f * modgrp\_factor\ f\ z"$   
*<proof>*

We can now also easily derive the values  $G_2(i) = \pi$  and  $G_2(\rho) = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$  using the same technique we used earlier for general  $G_k$  with  $k \geq 3$ .

**lemma** Eisenstein\_G2\_ii: "Eisenstein\_G 2 i = of\_real pi"  
 <proof>

**lemma** Eisenstein\_E2\_ii: "Eisenstein\_E 2 i = 3 / of\_real pi"  
 <proof>

**lemma** Eisenstein\_G2\_rho: "Eisenstein\_G 2 modfun\_rho = of\_real (2 / sqrt  
 3 \* pi)"  
 <proof>

**lemma** Eisenstein\_E2\_rho: "Eisenstein\_E 2 modfun\_rho = of\_real (2 \* sqrt  
 3 / pi)"  
 <proof>

**end**

## References

- [1] T. M. Apostol. *Modular Functions and Dirichlet Series in Number Theory*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer New York, 1990.
- [2] S. Lang. *Elliptic Functions*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer New York, 1973.